

VersaForm XL

User's Guide

for

MS-DOS
and
Microsoft Windows™

VersaForm Systems

VERSAFORM XL USER'S GUIDE

Copyright © 1991, 1994, 1998 VersaForm Systems

This software product is copyrighted, and all rights are reserved by VersaForm Systems. Lawful users of this program are licensed only to read the program from its medium into memory of a computer, solely for the purpose of executing the program. In the case of a multi-user program, users are licensed only to read the program into a single network file server. Copying, duplicating, selling, or otherwise distributing this product is a violation of the law.

This manual is copyrighted and all rights are reserved. This document may not, in whole or in part, be copied, photocopied, reproduced, translated, or reduced to any electronic medium or machine readable form without prior consent, in writing, from VersaForm Systems.

Revised 11/91, 5/92, 12/92, 9/94, 7/98. Printed in U.S.A.

VersaForm™ is a registered trademark of VersaForm Systems.

MS-DOS™ and Windows™ are registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation.

VERSAFORM SYSTEMS

591 W. Hamilton Ave. Suite 201

Campbell, CA 95008

Voice (800) 678-1111

Fax (408) 370-3393

Technical Support

(800) 999-6081

CONTENTS

PART I INTRODUCTION	1
Chapter 1 INTRODUCTION TO VERSAFORM XL	3
What VersaForm XL Can Do	3
How You'll Use VersaForm XL	4
General Information	9
The Screen and the Cursor	9
Dates	10
Disk Drives	10
Diskettes	10
Warning	10
Files	10
File Capacity	11
Form Size	11
Numbers	11
The Enter Key	12
ASCII Files	12
Backup and Copying	12
Installation	12
Equipment	12
Required Equipment	12
Optional Equipment	13
DOS Configuration	13
Check User Available Memory	13
DOS and Memory Size	13
Installing on a Hard Disk System	14
Installing on Microsoft Windows	14
Mouse Installation	15
Networks	15
Setting Up Serial Printers	15
Installation of Color Displays	15
Starting Up VersaForm XL	15
Chapter 2 HANDS ON EXERCISE	17
Fill in the Single Items	18
Enter Data in the Column Lines	22
Save the form	28
The Filing Commands	28
Locate Forms in Your File	29
Change a Column Line	34
Remove a Form	35
Chapter 3 HANDS-ON EXERCISE: PREPARING A REPORT	37
Choose the Items to Report on	37
How Will the Data Be Printed?	39
Selecting Items to Subtotal and Total	39

Select the Data You Want	41
Produce the Report	45

PART II USING THE VERSAFORM XL DATABASE 49

Chapter 4 CREATE A FILE AND DESIGN A FORM 51

Form Design Overview	51
Designing a Form	51
Text and Single Items	53
Text	53
Single Items	53
Examples of Single Items	55
Enter Text and Single Items	55
The Key	56
A Key Item	57
Two Part Keys	57
Choosing The Key	57
Columns	57
Entering Column Headings	58
Column Lines	59
Change The Design Of A Form	60
Copy an Existing Form Design	61
Delete an Existing Form Design	61
Checking and Automatic Filling	62
Print the Form Definition	62

Chapter 5 FILING -- DATA ENTRY AND RETRIEVAL 63

VersaForm XL Commands	63
Data Entry Commands	64
Zoom	64
Validate (Edit Menu)	65
To Enter Data on a Form	65
Save (Forms Menu)	66
What If You Make a Mistake?	66
Undo (Edit Menu)	67
Delete (Edit Menu)	67
Clear (Edit Menu)	67
Insert (Edit Menu)	68
Page Forward	68
Page Backward	68
To Fill in Another Form in the Same File	68
To Print the Form	68
Print (Forms Menu)	69
Retrieve Forms	69
The Arrangement of Forms in a File	69
Index (Forms Menu)	70
Using the Key Item Directly	70
Get (Forms Menu)	70
Next (Forms Menu)	70
Search (Forms Menu)	71
Browse Through a File	73

First (Forms Menu)	73
Last (Forms Menu)	73
Next (Forms Menu)	73
Back (Forms Menu)	73
Other Commands	73
Remove (Forms Menu)	73
Space Report (Utils Menu)	74
Exit (File Menu)	74
Procedures	74
Run Procedure (Run Menu)	74
Switch File (File Menu)	75
The Calculator	75
Calculate (Utils Menu)	75
Perform Arithmetic Operations	76
Errors	76
Other Calculator Commands	77
Chain Calculations	78
Calculator HELP Command	78
Chapter 6 AUTOMATIC CHECKING AND AUTOMATIC FILLING	81
Overview	81
Choosing Checking and Automatic Filling	81
Checking Options	83
Minimum-Length	83
Maximum Length	83
Justify	83
Numeric	83
Yes Or No	83
Self-Checking	84
Mandatory	84
Extended Checks	84
Range Check	84
Format Check	85
List Check	86
Automatic Filling	88
Lookup	88
Todaysdate	90
Calculation	90
Running Totals	92
Default Values	94
Column Total	94
Chapter 7 REPORTS	95
Report Control Instructions	95
Creating a Report	96
Totaling	99
Averages	101
Counts	106
Percentages	107
Report Variables	108
The Report Definition Form	109
Selection Conditions	116

Multiple Selection Conditions	119
Variables in Selection Conditions	120
Note	120
Combining Files in a Report	121
After the Instructions Are Entered	122
Remove a Report	123
Chapter 8 PRINT ON PREPRINTED FORMS	125
Create a Print Format	125
Print Line and Column Numbers	126
Enter a Print Format	127
The Print Format	130
Columnar Items	130
Page 2 Items	131
Page 3 Items	132
Operator-Entered Values	133
System-Generated Values	133
Global Variables	133
Other Options on the Print Format Menu	133
Electronic Print Formats	134
Electronic Print Format Fields	135
Columnar Items	135
Page 2 Items	136
Page 3 Items	136
Print The Forms	136
Select the Forms to Print	136
Specify Your Selection Choice	137
The Printing Process	138
Manual Selection in Copy/Print Forms	139
Chapter 9 COPY FORMS AND DATA	141
Overview	141
Copy Filled-in Forms	141
Select the Forms to Be Copied	141
The Copying Process	142
Manual Selection	142
Duplicates	142
Use Copy/Print to Remove Forms	143
Copy Print Formats and Control Instructions	143
Transfer Data With Copy By Name	144
How To Use Copy By Name	145
Changing the Key Item	147
Chapter 10 PRINT MAILING LABELS	149
Program Features and Overview	149
Creating the Label Text File With a Report	149
Entering the Instructions	150
Chapter 11 SETUP AND SECURITY	155
How To Do Setup	155
Setup Options	156
Function Key Options	160

Report Options	160
Adding Users / Security	160
The User Registration Form	162
Chapter 12 MULTI-USER OPERATION	165
Multi-User Features	165
Transactions	166
Locking	167
Locking On Interactive Commands	168
Locking In Procedures	169
Locking in Reports	170
Operational Modes	170
Technical Note	171
Multi-User Commands	171
Save, Save_Continue	171
Next, Next_Continue, Back, Back_Continue	171
Locks	171
PART III VERSAFORM XL ADVANCED FEATURES	173
Chapter 13 INTRODUCTION TO PROCEDURES	175
A Simple Look-Up Procedure	175
Primary and Secondary Files	177
The Procedure	178
Procedure Names	180
Secondary Files	181
Key-From1 and Key-From2	181
The Procedure	181
Procedure Statements	182
Using Form Items in a Procedure	183
Identifying Form Items With the Same Name	183
Form Items With Spaces or Symbols	183
Chapter 14 WRITING PROCEDURES	185
Changing a Procedure or Writing a New One	185
Procedure Types	186
Checking Procedures	186
Edit Procedures	187
Filling Procedures	187
Pick Procedures	188
Start Procedures	188
Save Procedures	189
Stop Procedures	189
Command Procedures	189
User Procedures	190
Elements of a Procedure (Procedure Syntax)	191
Identifiers	191
Form Id (Notation: AorB)	191
Form Items (Notation: Formitem)	191
Column Items in Procedures	191
Comments	192

Literals	193
Constants	193
Variables	194
Reserved Words	195
Building Procedure Statements	196
Built-In Procedures and Functions	196
Computation Exceptions	198
Assignment Statements	199
Compound Statements	200
Procedure Chaining	204
Calling Procedures	204
Procedure Calling	204
Cancelling Procedures	205
Automatic Rounding and Numeric Precision	206
Automatic Padding	207
Reading or Importing Ascii Files	208
Writing Ascii Files	209
I/O Error Handling	210
More Than Two Files	211
Windowing Routines	212
Include	213
File Handling	213
Procedure Handling	214
Errors and Exceptions	214
The Continue Message	215
Chapter 15 BUILT-IN PROCEDURES AND FUNCTIONS	217
Built-in Routines	218
Manipulating Forms	218
Manipulating Column Lines	219
Entering and Transferring Data	220
Manipulating Strings	221
Other Procedures and Functions	223
Alphabetical Listing of Built-In Routines	224
Filing Command Procedures	234
Chapter 16 SAMPLE PROCEDURES	267
A Menu Procedure	268
Invoicing - Sequential Numbering	270
Removing Selected Lines Prior To Printing Statements	272
Posting Several Transactions to an Inventory	274
Procedure Post	276
Procedure Post	276
Global Changes to a File	278
Sample Procedure Files	280
Sample Application Files	280
Chapter 17 CUSTOM MENUS AND CONTEXT SENSITIVE HELP	281
Custom Menus	281
Overview	281
Sample Menus	282
Creating Custom Menus	283

Background Files	285
Context Sensitive Help	286
Chapter 18 Utility Functions	287
Setting the Date	287
Send a Print Control Sequence	287
Changing the Default Disk / Path Name	287
File Integrity Test	288
File Recovery	288
Transfer Utility	291
Activity Trace	291
Activity Trace	291
DOS Command Line	291
Utility Popup Menu	292
PART IV APPENDICES	295
APPENDIX A FORMATTING AND BACKUP	297
Formatting Diskettes	297
Backup	297
APPENDIX B SELF-CHECKING NUMBERS	299
The Check Digit	299
APPENDIX C COMPARISON AND ORDERING	301
APPENDIX D FILE FORMATS IN EARLIER RELEASES	302
INDEX	304

Part I

Introduction

Chapter 1

INTRODUCTION TO VERSAFORM XL

What VersaForm XL Can Do

VersaForm XL is a database that emulates common business forms and ledgers. It deals with data the way you do on paper, but with the speed and power of the computer. This makes it especially suitable for business accounting, bookkeeping, and paperwork tasks. Your present knowledge of business data and record-keeping tasks is all the preparation you need.

VersaForm XL can replace your file cards, ledgers and paper worksheets. It easily adapts to the paper forms you are already using. VersaForm XL is especially designed for such jobs as:

- * Invoices
- * Inventories
- * Mailing Lists
- * Sales Analyses
- * Customer Files
- * Labor Accounting
- * Personnel Records
- * Collection Catalogs
- * Work-in-Process Reporting
- * Capital Equipment Tracking
- * Accounts Payable and Receivable
- * Student Records and Transcripts

How You'll Use VersaForm XL

You will follow five general steps:

1. First you'll design a form that fits your data processing job. You probably already have a paper business form that is suitable; sketch it quickly on the screen (Figure 1-1).

ALPHA TOOLS INC.						
SERVING THE BAY AREA SINCE 1925						
CUSTOMER	ACCT#					
ADDRESS	PHONE					
CITY	STATE ..	ZIP				
ORDER DATE	CLERK					
L#	QTY	STOCK#	.DESCRIPTION.	PRICE	AMOUNT.	
1	...	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....
2	...	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....
3	...	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....
4	...	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....
5	...	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....
				SUBTOTAL	.....
				TAX	.....
				TOTAL	.....

Figure 1-1

2. Enter data on the form you've designed.

VersaForm XL will check your entries for accuracy and perform calculations you've requested, then save the filled-in form on your hard

A collection of saved FORMS make up a FILE. (Figure 1-2).

ALPHA TOOLS,, INC
SERVING THE BAY AREA SINCE 1925
CUSTOMER JOHN COOPER ACCT# COO45678

ALPHA TOOLS, INC
SERVING THE BAY AREA SINCE 1925
CUSTOMER ED CARTWRIGHT ACCT# CAR33521

ALPHA TOOLS INC.
SERVING THE BAY AREA SINCE 1925
CUSTOMER Jane Steel ACCT# STE12345
ADDRESS 123 Main St. PHONE

CITY Elm Park	STATE IL ZIP 23456
ORDER DATE 10/21/83	CLERK Sam.....

L#	QTY	STOCK#↓	DESCRIPTION	PRICE	AMOUNT.
1	1..	100..	Hammer.....	5.95.	5.95..
					..SUBTOTAL 5.95.....
					TAX . 0.30
					TOTAL . 6.25.....

Figure 1-2

- * These forms may be retrieved, inspected, or changed at any time.
- * The information on the forms can be moved from one form to another or printed in any format.

3. Request reports to analyze the data in your files.

VersaForm XL will organize information you select and print it (Figure 1-3).

07/28/98		SALES ANALYSIS		Page 1
Description	Qty	Amount	Clerk	
-----	----	-----	-----	
Chisel set	13	325.00	Art	
Chisel Set	13	325.00	Art	
Chisel Set	5	125.00	Sam	
-----	----	-----	-----	
Totals for Chisel set:	31	775.00		
Metric Skts	9	297.00	Joe	
Metric Skts	99	3267.00	Joe	
-----	----	-----	-----	
Totals for Metric Skts:	108	3564.00		
Ratchet Wr.	20	199.00	Art	
Ratchet Wr.	12	119.40	Joe	
Ratchet Wr.	20	199.00	Joe	
-----	----	-----	-----	
Totals for Ratchet Wr.:	52	517.40		
Screwdriver	6	111.00	Art	
Screwdriver	6	111.00	Sam	
Screwdriver	6	111.00	Art	
Screwdriver	6	111.00	Art	
-----	----	-----	-----	
Totals for Screwdriver:	24	444.00		
Totals:	===== 215	===== 5300.40		

Figure 1-3

* The information you select will be sorted and printed in any manner you specify, in summary or in detail.

- Print the forms that help you communicate with customers, suppliers and others. You may print on plain paper (Figure 1-4a), on mailing labels (Figure 1-4b), or on preprinted forms.

```

INV# 2                                INVOICE
INV_DATE .....                      YMM ..... SHIPDATE .....
CUST_ID 101                          CR_DR_MEMO .....
SOLD_TO Able Enterprises              SHIP_TO Able Enterprises
ADDR1 102 6'th Ave.                  SHIPAD1 44 Dockside St.
ADDR2 .....                          SHIPAD2 Pier 44
CITY Gotham City                    ST MM SHIPCITY Gotham City          SST MM
ZIP 12345                            CTRY ..... SZIP 12346          SCTRY .....
TEL ..... REP .....                 SALESPERSON ..... PO# .....
VIA Motor Freigh FOB .....          TERMS N30
REMARKS .....

L# .B_O. .QTY. .ITEM#... ..DESCRIPTION..... UNITPRICE EXTPRICE.
1 ..... 2 4          Chisel                11.40    22.80
2 ..... 3 1          Hammer                12.95    38.85

SALES_TX .....                      AMT_PAID ..... SALE_AMT    61.65
FREIGHT .....                        DIS_TAKEN ..... AMT_DUE ....61.65
    
```

Figure 1-4a

William R. Hutchinson 123 Main Street Cupertino, CA 95014	Mary Blake 5961 Millich Ave Campbell, CA 95008	Mr. John Pasquale 961 Front Street San Jose, CA 95128

Figure 1-4b

Figure 1-4 a, b

* Select just the information you want printed. Add timely comments and change them at will.

* Print on mailing labels; up to nine labels across the paper, up to nine items and nine lines per label.

- Link your files together. VersaForm XL has its own simple programming language. You can write procedures, using this language, that can move information from one file to another. For instance, a procedure can transfer a price and product description from an inventory file to an invoice. Thus the operator need only key in an item code, and the computer will fill in the description and price automatically (Figure 1-5).

**INVOICING-INVENTORY CONTROL
APPLICATION**

CUSTOMER FILE

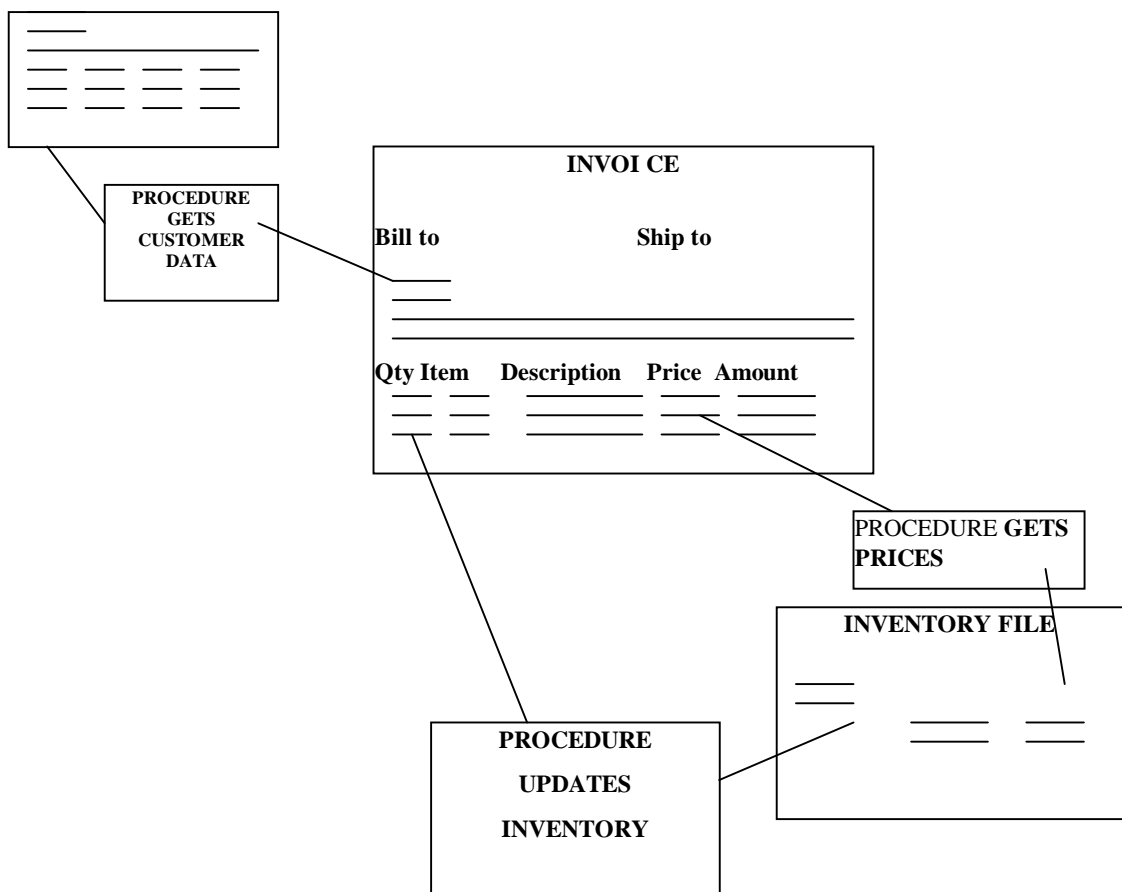







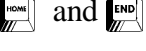
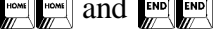



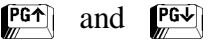





Figure 1-5

General Information

THE SCREEN AND THE CURSOR

In VersaForm XL a form is usually 160 characters wide and 60 lines high. Of course the screen on most computers isn't this big, so you will normally see only a part of your form. Imagine that the screen is a window that lets you see a portion of your form that is 80 characters by 23. Moving this window is called scrolling.

The cursor is the marker on the screen that shows where the next character will appear. It can be moved by pressing the arrow keys, and a number of others:

	These keys move the cursor from one data item to the next. If the form is larger than the screen,  will cause scrolling (i.e., move the window);  will not.
	Moves to the previous item; just the opposite of  .
	Move to the left and right ends of the visible part of the line. They do not move the window.
	Pressing twice moves to the upper left and lower right corners of the visible screen.
	Moves the cursor to the next empty column line.
 and 	Scroll (move the window) right and left.
	Move up or down to the next visible column line.
 and 	Move to the next column line, either up or down. If not visible, the next line is made so.
 and 	Scroll up and down.
	Move the cursor all the way left and right, then (when pressed a second time) to the upper left or lower right corners of the form. If the edge or corner of the screen isn't visible at the moment, scrolling occurs.

DATES

A date is always written numerically, as month, day, and year. Use either slashes (/) or hyphens (-) as separators. Use one or two digits for the month and day, and either two or four digits for the year. For example, 4/18/90 or 11/9/1991 or 04/02/91 or 12-21-2002.

These formats enable VersaForm XL to recognize dates and put them in chronological order.

You may modify the system to choose the dates non-U.S. convention of day, month, and year. Refer to Chapter 11, "Setup and Security."

DISK DRIVES

The two diskette drives are referred to as A and B. The designation for hard disk drives varies with the machine but is usually drive C. In this manual, we will assume that your hard disk is drive C.

DISKETTES

Handle your diskettes gently and keep them clean. Refer to your computer handbook for information on diskettes.

Label each file diskette with both a diskette number and file name. Write with a soft, felt-tip pen, not a ball point pen.

Many diskettes have a small "write-protect" notch on the right side. When the notch is covered (on a 5 1/4" diskette), or if there is no notch, no data can be written on the diskette.

WARNING:

DON'T REMOVE DISKETTES WHEN A PROGRAM IS RUNNING. Incorrect diskette removal could cause the program to record data in the wrong place or erase data already entered.

Also, **DON'T SHUT THE SYSTEM DOWN WHEN A PROGRAM IS RUNNING.** You could lose data.

FILES

A VersaForm XL file is a collection of business forms, such as invoices, customer files, collection catalogs, freight documents, or personnel records, stored on a magnetic disk. Like standard paper business forms, the forms in a VersaForm XL

file contain printed information, such as messages and titles, and blank lines to fill in. Some forms also have columns for multiple entries.

A form need be designed only once for each file, and then a blank form may be requested at any time. When a form is displayed on the screen, information may be keyed in. Forms that have been filled in can be retrieved, examined, updated or deleted whenever required.

All the forms in a single VersaForm XL file are of the same design. For example, one file contains purchase order forms, another, inventory records.

FILE CAPACITY

VersaForm XL supports files up to 2,000,000,000 bytes (2 gigabytes) in size. The number of forms that can be stored in this space varies, because forms are compressed before they are stored on disk.

FORM SIZE

Each form may contain up to 20,000 bytes of data, before compression.

NUMBERS

In VersaForm XL a number may include up to 13 digits to the left of the decimal point and up to 8 decimal places. The largest number that can be used is therefore 9,999,999,999,999.99999999 (almost 10 trillion). A leading + or - sign may be used. +05.5, -3345, 2, and -1.88888888 are valid numbers. Money symbols (e.g., \$) and separators (e.g., commas between the hundreds and thousands, as in 10,000) are not allowed.

* Some common "numbers" such as telephone and social security numbers are not considered to be true numbers by VersaForm XL, because they cannot be used in arithmetic. **Only numbers which can be added and subtracted qualify.**

* Numbers are compared by VersaForm XL on the basis of their true values. Thus, 0 is equal to 00000 and 0.00; 9.9, 9.90, and 009.900 are all equal.

* For use outside the U.S. the decimal character may be changed. See Chapter 11, "Setup and Security" for instructions.

THE ENTER KEY

On many computers, this key is also called the Return key. Most of the time you'll need to press the Enter key after giving instructions or responding to the system, to indicate that your instruction or response is complete. Some exceptions is when you choose items from your form by pressing "X" (e.g., selecting items to report on) or when you use the command menu. The system will recognize these responses by performing the appropriate action immediately.

ASCII FILES

When VersaForm XL sends information to a disk, rather than to a printer, it creates a DOS "ASCII" file. Such a file can be used to produce form letters, labels, and other documents, and to interface with other DOS programs.

VersaForm XL procedures can also be used to read and write ASCII files.

BACKUP AND COPYING

The VersaForm XL program is protected by copyright. It may be copied only for your own use as backup copies.

You can use the DOS utility DISKCOPY to make these copies.

If you have a hard disk, you may copy VersaForm XL to it, but if you have a second computer, you must purchase a second copy of VersaForm XL. The rule is that only one copy may be in use at any one time.

Keep your backup copies in a safe place. If your program disk is damaged, and you do not have a backup copy, a replacement may be ordered.

Installation

1. Make sure you have the required equipment.
2. Back up your VersaForm XL disks.
3. Complete and return the Registration Card so you will receive notices of system updates and additional features

REQUIRED EQUIPMENT

- IBM PC, PC/XT, PC/AT, PS/2 or compatible computer.
- 440K available RAM. For large applications, 500K may be needed.

VersaForm XL requires a hard disk capable of holding all of the program files. A hard disk of at least 40MB is recommended.

VersaForm XL requires DOS version 2.1 or later. Multi-user operation is supported only on DOS 3.1 and later versions; the DOS SHARE command (or its equivalent) must be in effect. The networks used must support the DOS record locking facility (Interrupt 21H, Function code 5CH). All networks that we are aware of at this writing provide this facility. Some networks automatically provide SHARE (if yours does, you need not issue the SHARE command).

Use the Test subcommand of the LOKcks command (see Chapter 12, "Multi-User Operations") to find out if your system is providing the required multi-user support.

OPTIONAL EQUIPMENT

- Printer--parallel or serial.

DOS CONFIGURATION

Be sure that you have a CONFIG.SYS on your DOS boot disk and that it specifies enough files. Fifteen is plenty. (See your DOS manual on Configuration if this is new to you; look at the FILES statement. Try "FILES=15").

CHECK USER AVAILABLE MEMORY

Make sure there's enough user available memory.

1. Start up DOS.
2. Use the DOS utility CHKDSK to determine memory available. The number of "bytes free" should be 440,000 or greater. Applications with large VersaForm XL procedures may require 500,000.

If you don't have enough memory, see the "DOS and Memory Size" section below. Otherwise, continue with the instructions .

DOS AND MEMORY SIZE

Even if your computer has 640K RAM or more, you still may not have enough user available memory. DOS may be larger than normal if you have configured extra buffers. Or you may be using one or more resident programs. If the DOS area is too large, you must either:

1. Reconfigure DOS (with fewer buffers, etc.) to free some user available memory.

OR

- 2 Install additional memory, and, if necessary, software to configure your system to make it available.

INSTALLING ON A HARD DISK SYSTEM

Before you can install VersaForm XL, you must have set up DOS on your hard disk. Refer to your DOS manual for instructions.

To install either the single or multi-user version of VersaForm XL, follow the instructions below:

If you are installing VersaForm XL on a network, or you have more than one hard disk drive, you may be installing on a drive other than C. Or, you may install to a directory other than \VF. The instructions below assume drive C and directory \VF.

1. Start up your system and change to drive A:


```
C> A:
```

2. Insert the first diskette and run the INSTALL program. This will create the necessary VF directory and copy all the VersaForm XL files. Existing files will be overwritten.

```
A> INSTALL
```

3. If you're not there already, change to the VF directory on drive C:

```
A> C:  
C> CD \VF
```

After you install VersaForm XL, if there is a file called README.VF7 (or a similar name) in your VF directory, read it. Changes to the system which were made after this book was printed are described there. To print a copy of the README file type **COPY README.VF7 PRN**, and press . To view a copy, type **TYPE README.VF7 |MORE** at the command line.

INSTALLING ON MICROSOFT WINDOWS

The steps outlined in the previous section can be followed under Windows by executing them in an MS-DOS window. If you prefer, you can leave Windows and execute them under DOS. Then:

Under Windows, from the Program Manager, click File, then Run. In the Command Line box, enter **C:\VF\WVFSETUP** (making the usual assumption about the drive and path). This will create a program group for VersaForm XL,

containing a VersaForm icon, and another for the Readme file. VersaForm may now be invoked as any Windows application.

As installed, VersaForm will run within a window. If you wish it to run in full-screen mode, you may change VF.PIF in the usual way.

To use the mouse in VersaForm under Windows, you must install the mouse drivers in DOS. See below.

MOUSE INSTALLATION

If you intend to use a mouse, you must install its driver in your DOS configuration or Autoexec file. This is true even for Windows--the mouse facilities of Windows will not be usable in VersaForm XL unless the mouse driver has been installed to operate under DOS.

NETWORKS

Unless your network specifies otherwise, for multi-user operation you should put the DOS SHARE command in the AUTOEXEC.BAT file on each of the network workstations.

SETTING UP SERIAL PRINTERS

Almost all printers on IBM PC compatibles are parallel printers, but serial printers may be used. To install a serial printer, use the DOS command called MODE. Instructions are found in your DOS user's guide. You will initialize the Asynchronous Communications Adapter and then redirect the parallel printer output to it.

INSTALLATION OF COLOR DISPLAYS

If you have a color display, you may select the colors you wish to use. Each user can have his or her own colors. See Chapter 11, "Setup and Security" for instructions.

Starting Up VersaForm XL

If you are using DOS, boot the DOS system if you haven't already, and then continue with these steps:

The following assumes that you have installed VersaForm XL on drive C and subdirectory VF.

1. If you're not there already, change to the VF directory on drive C:

```
C> CD \VF
```

2. Type VF at the prompt.

```
C:\VF> VF
```

If you are using Windows, select (double-click) the VersaForm program group, and then select the VersaForm icon.

In either case you will be asked for your user ID. Enter, and then enter **VF** when asked for the password. **VF** is the initial password for **Manager**. If security is a consideration, it should be changed as soon as possible. You will now see the Main Menu (Figure 1-6).

```
VersaForm XL Main Menu

1.  Form Design
2.  Filing
3.  Reports
4.  Design a Print Format
5.  Copy or Print Forms
6.  Mailing Label Printer
7.  VersaForm Utilities
8.  Enter or change a procedure
9.  Exit
```

Figure 1-6

You may now begin to use the system. To change user setup information such as screen colors, see Chapter 11, "Setup and Security". To add user IDs or change passwords, see the same chapter. We recommend that you read Chapter 11 soon.

At the Main Menu (Figure 1-6), enter the number of the function you want. After you make this choice, VersaForm XL will ask what file you will use.

```
Enter the drive letter or path name of your file
(or press escape to return to the menu): C:\VF
```

Press E to indicate that your file is on the path displayed, or enter the path that contains your file. VersaForm XL will ask for the file name:

```
Enter file name or press return to accept default.
(Wildcard characters ? and * may be used.
Press escape to select new path.)
```

```
Enter file name: *.*
```

Enter the file name. If you don't know the file name, enter a question mark or a filename with wild cards (such as "*. *") to see a list of the files on the hard disk. From this list, select the file you wish to work on.

To return to the previous prompt and enter a new drive letter or path, press the Escape key.

Chapter 2

HANDS ON EXERCISE

The "Hands-On" Exercise allows you to begin using VersaForm XL immediately and see how the program works. It covers filling in and retrieving forms. If you are using diskettes, refer to Appendix A.

Follow the instructions in Chapter 1 to install and start up the VersaForm XL System. We've already designed a form for you to work with which will show you how to use VersaForm and demonstrate just a few of its useful features.

1. From the Main Menu (figure 2-1), select #2 for Filing.

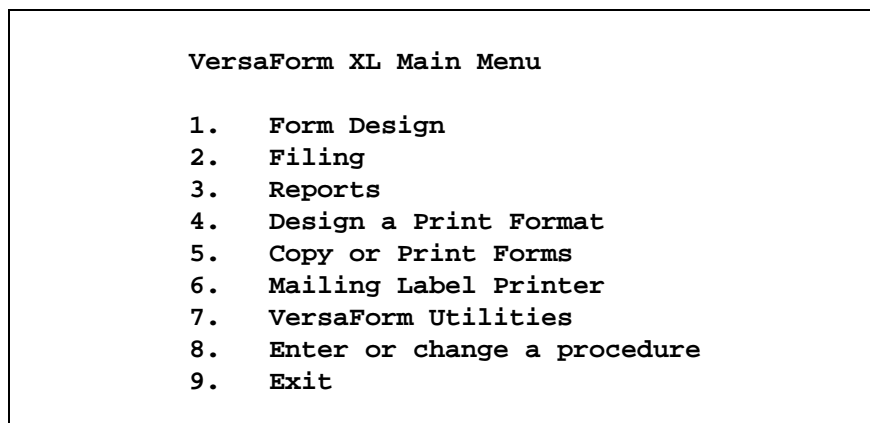




Figure 2-1


2. Press . This message, or a variation, will be displayed:

```
Enter the drive letter or path name of your
file or press escape to return to the menu: C
```

3. Press  to accept the default drive. If the default drive is incorrect, enter the appropriate drive letter. Now you'll be asked to identify the file you want to work on. You'll see:

```
Enter file name or press return to accept default.
(Wildcard characters ? and * may be used.
 Press escape to select new path.)

Enter file name: *.*
```

4. Key in (type on the keyboard) SAMPLE (use either capitals or small letters), then press . "SAMPLE" is the name of the exercise file.

* You will see a form displayed like the example in Figure 2-2.

```

                          ALPHA TOOLS INC.
                        SERVING THE BAY AREA SINCE 1925

CUSTOMER ..... ACCT# .....
ADDRESS ..... PHONE .....
CITY ..... STATE .. ZIP .....
ORDER DATE ..... CLERK .....

L# QTY STOCK#↓ DESCRIPTION PRICE AMOUNT.
 1 ... ..       .....      .....

                                SUBTOTAL .....
                                TAX .....
                                TOTAL .....
```

Figure 2-2

When the blank ALPHA TOOLS form is displayed, we can begin.

Figure 2-3 shows a partially filled-in form. The following instructions will tell you how to make the same entries.

Fill In the Single Items

The single items are the items which will be filled in just once on each form. On the Alpha Tools form these are the items at the top and also subtotal, tax and total at the bottom.

1. If the cursor is not at the single item, CUSTOMER, move it there.

If you can't find the cursor, press one of the arrow keys to make it move.

```

                ALPHA TOOLS INC.
                SERVING THE BAY AREA SINCE 1925

CUSTOMER Jane Steel..... ACCT# .....
ADDRESS 123 Main St..... PHONE .....
CITY Elm Park..... STATE IL ZIP 23456
ORDER DATE ..... CLERK .....

L# QTY STOCK#↓ DESCRIPTION PRICE AMOUNT.
 1 ... ..


                                SUBTOTAL .....
                                TAX .....
                                TOTAL .....


```


Figure 2-3

2. Key JANE STEEL into CUSTOMER. If you make a typing error, backspace until the cursor is on the incorrect character; then key the correct one over it.


Notice that backspacing over characters does not erase them. To remove a character, position the cursor on it and press the space bar.

3. Press  or the tab key once to move the cursor into the next item, ACCT#. (Don't key anything here yet.)

The tab and  keys move the cursor to the next item.

4. Press  or tab to move to ADDRESS and key in 123 MAIN ST. Tab twice to CITY and key in ELM PARK; tab to STATE and key in IL; tab to ZIP and key in 23456.

Compare your screen to the illustration in Figure 2-3; the items you've keyed in should look the same.

Continue pressing  or tab and notice that the cursor moves to each item in turn. Eventually it moves back to CUSTOMER.

5. Press ESC once, to display the command menu at the top of the screen. The command menu is the place where all VersaForm XL commands are entered (unless a function key is used):


```
File fOrms Edit Run Utilities Help
```

Press E (for the Edit menu). The Edit menu will appear.

```
File fOrms Edit Run Utilities Help
```

```
Validate <F1>
Insert line <AltF8>
Delete line <AltF7>
Undo
Clear form <F9>
New Line <AltF4>
```

Press V for VALIDATE. You may hear a beep and a message will appear (Figure 2-4):

Note: Another way of invoking a command is to use the function key. Most commands have function keys. Note on the menu above that the function key for VALIDATE is .

```

                                ALPHA TOOLS INC.
                                SERVING THE BAY AREA SINCE 1925
                                Cursor
CUSTOMER Jane Steel..... ACCT# .....
ADDRESS 123 Main St..... PHONE .....
CITY ELM PARK..... STATE IL ZIP 23456
ORDER DATE ..... CLERK .....

L# QTY STOCK#↓ DESCRIPTION PRICE AMOUNT.
 1 ... ..


                                SUBTOTAL .....
                                TAX .....
                                TOTAL .....

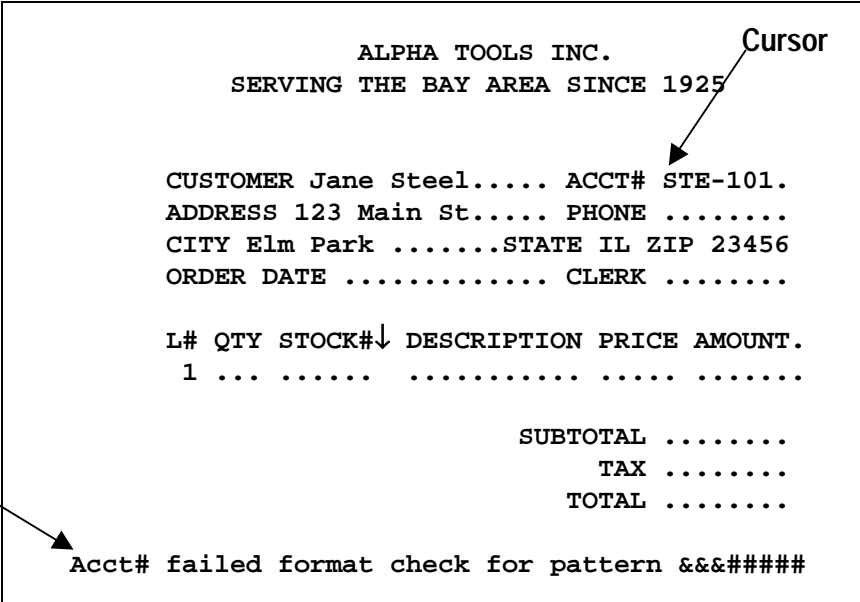
Message
----> Item must be entered-Acct#
```

Figure 2-4

The VALIDATE command asks VersaForm XL to check and accept your data entries. When we designed this form, we specified in VersaForm XL's automatic-checking and filling that the item called ACCT# is MANDATORY; it must be entered. When a message like the one above appears, the cursor will automatically be positioned at the item to be filled in, so you can enter the required data.

VersaForm XL's automatic checking and filling feature will be explained at length in Chapter 6.

- Key STE-101 in ACCT#. Now try to VALIDATE your entries by pressing . Another message now tells you that all entries into ACCT# must follow a particular format or pattern (Figure 2-5). We used automatic checking and filling to specify a FORMAT check for ACCT#. The cursor is again positioned at ACCT#.



```

ALPHA TOOLS INC.
SERVING THE BAY AREA SINCE 1925


CUSTOMER Jane Steel..... ACCT# STE-101.
ADDRESS 123 Main St..... PHONE .....
CITY Elm Park .....STATE IL ZIP 23456
ORDER DATE ..... CLERK .....

L# QTY STOCK#↓ DESCRIPTION PRICE AMOUNT.
 1 ... .....

SUBTOTAL .....
TAX .....
TOTAL .....

Acct# failed format check for pattern &&#####
  
```

Figure 2-5

- Key in STE12345. The format we specified is three letters followed by five numerical digits. VALIDATE () your entry. VersaForm XL will tell you that everything checks (Figure 2-6).

ALPHA TOOLS INC.
SERVING THE BAY AREA SINCE 1925

CUSTOMER Jane Steel ACCT# STE12345
ADDRESS 123 Main St. PHONE
CITY Elm Park STATE IL ZIP 23456
ORDER DATE 10/21/83 CLERK

L#	QTY	STOCK#↓	DESCRIPTION	PRICE	AMOUNT.
1

SUBTOTAL
TAX
TOTAL

▲Entries checked-ok

Message

Cursor

Figure 2-6

Notice that ORDER DATE now shows the current date (or whatever date DOS finds on your computer's clock). We chose the TODAYSDATE feature in automatic checking and filling for this item.

8. Tab to CLERK, key in Sam and VALIDATE (F1).

Enter Data in the Column lines

1. Move the cursor to Line #1 in the item called QTY. Fill in the first line as shown in Figure 2-7.


```

                ALPHA TOOLS INC.
                SERVING THE BAY AREA SINCE 1925

CUSTOMER Jane Steel      ACCT# STE12345
ADDRESS 123 Main St.    PHONE .....
CITY Elm Park           STATE IL ZIP 23456
ORDER DATE 10/21/83     CLERK Sam.....

L# QTY STOCK#↓ DESCRIPTION PRICE AMOUNT.
---->  1 1.. 100... Hammer..... 5.95. 5.95...

PRICE ..... AMOUNT ..SUBTOTAL .....
                                TAX .....
                                TOTAL .....
    
```

Figure 2-7

When you VALIDATE your entries, a second line will appear.

* You must validate after filling in each column line before you can enter data into another line.

Note several changes in the form when Validation occurs (Figure 2-8).

```


L# QTY STOCK#↓ DESCRIPTION PRICE AMOUNT.
 1 1  100   Hammer      5.95  5.95
 2 ... ..
                                SUBTOTAL  5.95
                                TAX       0.30
                                TOTAL     6.25

Entries checked - OK
    
```

Figure 2-8

VersaForm XL has removed the dots or highlights (i.e., displays in reverse video or in a different color) the characters in Line 1 to show they are valid. (Which it does depends on how your screen is set up.) We chose VersaForm XL's automatic filling feature, CALCULATE, to compute the SUBTOTAL (based on the amount you keyed in), the TAX, and TOTAL, and fill them in. Also, the figures in the PRICE and AMOUNT columns were moved to the right, because we chose the JUSTIFY option for those items .

Notice the down arrow (↓) next to the STOCK# column heading. This indicates that a pick list has been set up for STOCK#. Press **ALT** **L** (for list) will display the pop up list that was set up in Automatic Checking and Filling for this field.

Items are selected from the list by highlighting the entry using the up and down arrow keys and then pressing , or by using the mouse.

2. While on line #2, select A44 from the STOCK# list and VALIDATE. You'll see (Figure 2-9) . . .

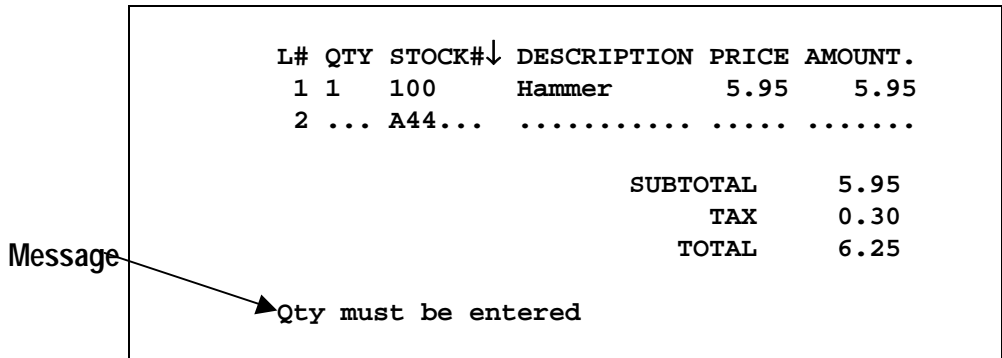


Figure 2-9

QTY is another MANDATORY entry.

3. Key in 2 under QTY, then VALIDATE again.

Notice what happens! The system automatically fills in DESCRIPTION and PRICE (based on the STOCK#). It found these items on a Lookup Table that was prepared when we chose LOOKUP as an automatic filling feature.

VersaForm XL also supplied the AMOUNT (QTY times PRICE). Then it updated the SUBTOTAL, computed the TAX, and filled in the correct TOTAL. It lined up (justified) all the figures, checked your entries, and provided a third column line. Your form now looks like Figure 2-10.

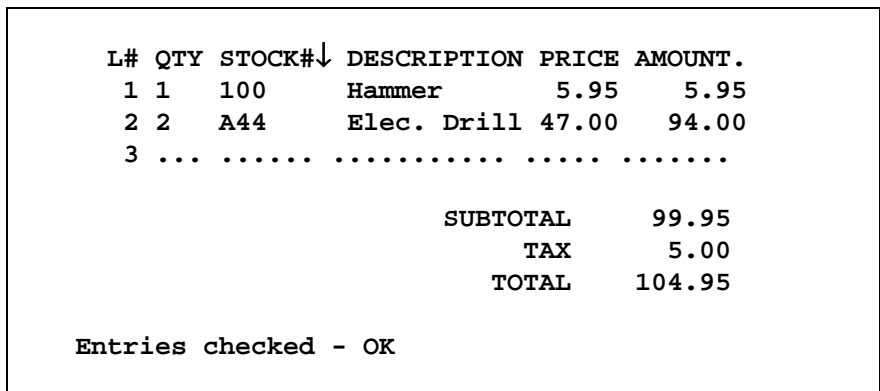



Figure 2-10

You already know you can type or space over characters. However, if you have a lot of data to remove, you may use the UNDO command on entries that have not yet been validated. UNDO removes all entries back to the last validation.

4. In Line 3, key in 1 under QTY; A54 under STOCK#; Hammer under DESCRIPTION, and 32.50 under PRICE.
5. Press ESC, then E for the Edit menu.
6. Key in U for Undo and press . (To remove data that has already been validated, use the DELETE command, discussed later.)
7. Key in the letter A under QTY. Key in A11 (A-eleven) under STOCK#. Try to VALIDATE. You'll see the message shown in Figure 2-11.

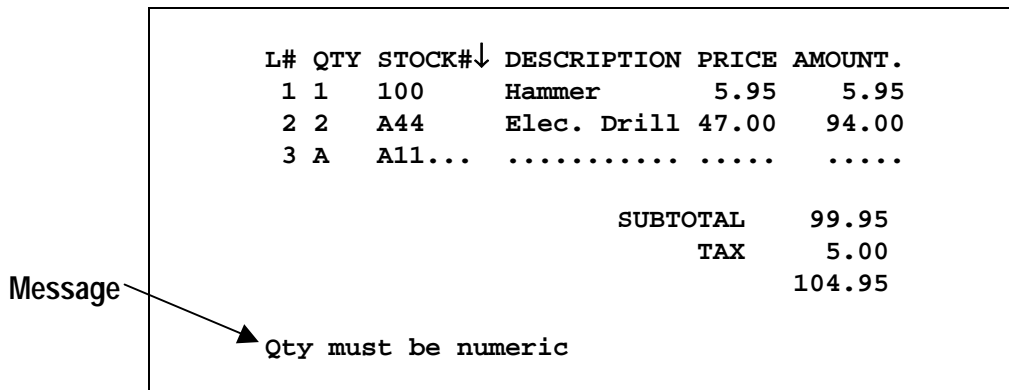


Figure 2-11

Another data entry check was set up for QTY: all entries into that item must be NUMERIC. Remember--the system will not accept entries that do not meet the specifications set up in automatic checking and filling when a form is designed.

8. Key in 2 over the A under QTY. NOW validate, and watch!

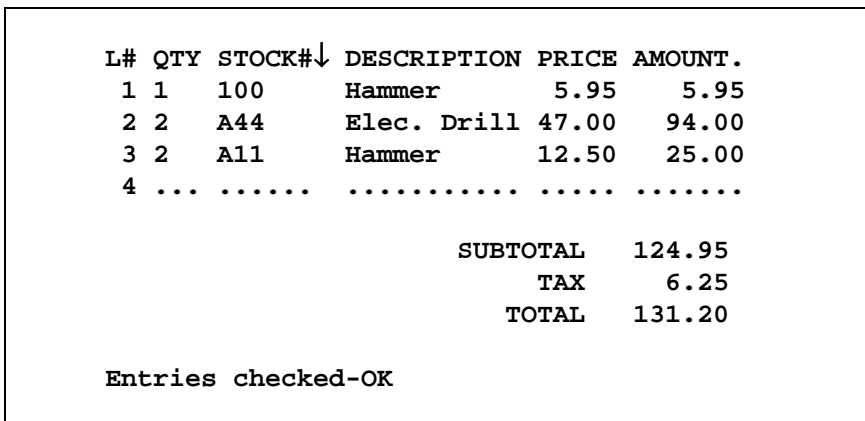


Figure 2-12

The DESCRIPTION, PRICE, AMOUNT, SUBTOTAL, TAX and TOTAL will all be filled in, calculated, totaled, and justified. (Figure 2-12)

* When you design your own forms, you can set up specifications like these in automatic checking and filling, so your data will be automatically checked, computed and filled in.

Although a Lookup Table, another automatic checking and filling option, was prepared for DESCRIPTION and PRICE when this form was designed, you may override it if you wish.

9. In Line #4, key in 2 under QTY and A11 under STOCK#.
10. Move the cursor into the PRICE column. Key in 7.95 under PRICE. This is not the price on the Lookup Table, but the system will accept whatever is keyed in. Remember--manual keying overrides automatic lookup and filling.
11. VALIDATE your entries. The system will fill in the DESCRIPTION and calculate the AMOUNT, SUBTOTAL, TAX and TOTAL, based on the QUANTITY and PRICE that you keyed in. (Figure 2-13)

Though the system didn't fill in PRICE (since you keyed it in yourself), it still filled in DESCRIPTION (Hammer), since automatic filling had been chosen for that item, and you didn't override it.

L#	QTY	STOCK#↓	DESCRIPTION	PRICE	AMOUNT.
1	1	100	Hammer	5.95	5.95
2	2	A44	Elec. Drill	47.00	94.00
3	2	A11	Hammer	12.50	25.00
4	2	A11	Hammer	7.95	15.90
5	...	.....	.....	.....	.....
SUBTOTAL					140.85
TAX					7.04
TOTAL					147.89
Entries checked - OK					

Figure 2-13


12. In Line #5, key in: 3 under QTY; A55 under STOCK#; 22.50 under PRICE. VALIDATE your entries.

VersaForm XL will fill in the DESCRIPTION, AMOUNT, SUBTOTAL, TAX and TOTAL, as shown in Figure 2-14.

L#	QTY	STOCK#↓	DESCRIPTION	PRICE	AMOUNT.
1	1	100	Hammer	5.95	5.95
2	2	A44	Elec. Drill	47.00	94.00
3	2	A11	Hammer	12.50	25.00
4	2	A11	Hammer	7.95	15.90
5	3	A55	Carbide Set	22.50	67.50
6	...	.....	.....	.....	.....
SUBTOTAL					208.35
TAX					10.42
TOTAL					218.77
Entries checked-OK					

Figure 2-14

Now suppose you decide you want to have VersaForm XL put in the PRICE instead, using the Table Lookup feature.

13. Move the cursor back to Line #5, then press  until the cursor is in the item called STOCK#.
14. Key in A55 again, over the A55 already entered.
15. VALIDATE your entry. PRICE, AMOUNT, SUBTOTAL, TAX and TOTAL will all be changed to agree with the STOCK# as they appear on the Lookup Table. Since you did not key in a value for PRICE yourself, VersaForm XL automatically filled it in and recalculated the other items (Figure 2-15).

L#	QTY	STOCK#↓	DESCRIPTION	PRICE	AMOUNT.
1	1	100	Hammer	5.95	5.95
2	2	A44	Elec. Drill	47.00	94.00
3	2	A11	Hammer	12.50	25.00
4	2	A11	Hammer	7.95	15.90
5	3	A55	Carbide Set	52.50	157.50
6	...	.....	.....	.....	.....
SUBTOTAL					298.35
TAX					14.92
TOTAL					313.27
Entries checked-OK					

Figure 2-15

Whenever you change or re-enter data on a form, VersaForm XL will adjust everything that depends on that entry.

Save the Form

The SAVE command writes the entries you make into your data file.

1. Press **F2** to SAVE. Alternatively, you could use the command menu, with the mouse or from the keyboard (ESC-O (fOrms) - S). You will see the message "New Form Saved".

WARNING: If you don't SAVE your entries, they won't be stored on the disk. Once the computer is turned off or your screen is cleared (without the SAVE command), the new data will be lost.

The Filing Commands

Unless you're using a function key to activate a command, you'll use the command menu, either with the mouse or from the keyboard. When using the keyboard, you must enter three keys: first ESC to get the menu bar,

```
File fOrms Edit Run Utilities Help
```

then a key to get a pulldown menu,

```
File fOrms Edit Run Utilities Help
Validate <F1>
Insert line <AltF8>
Delete line <AltF7>
Undo
Clear form <F9>
New Line <AltF4>
```

then the command.

The mouse can also be used call up the command menu. If you move the mouse to the top line of your form, outside of any field, and click, the command menu will pop up. Then you can choose commands by clicking on them. Clicking outside the menu will remove it.

All available commands and their function keys can be seen when you ask for help (function key **F10**). The Filing Commands will be displayed (Figure 2-17).



COMMAND	MENU	FUNCTION KEY	UersaForm XL v.7
BACK one form (Continue)	fOrms	F5 (Alt-F5)	To RETURN, press ESC
CALCulator	Utils	F7	
CLEAR to blank form	fOrms	F9	To MOVE THE SCREEN:
Columns Up/Down	--	Ctrl-F5/F6	Up: Ctrl-PgUp
DELETE a line	fOrms	Alt-F7	Down: Ctrl-PgDn
DISPLAY primary/second form	Edit	Alt-F10	Right: Ctrl- ->
EXECUTE a procedure	Procs	Alt-F1	Left: Ctrl- <-
EXIT (to main menu)	File	Alt-X	
FIRST/LAST form in file	fOrms		To MOVE THE CURSOR:
GET a form	fOrms	F3	Arrow key
HELP	Help	F10	This line: Home, End
INDEX list	fOrms	F4	Corners:
INSERT a line	Edit	Alt-F8	Home-Home, End-End
NEXT form (Continue)	fOrms	F6	To/From Command: Esc
Page Forward/Backward	--	Pg Dn/Up	Next item : Enter
PRINT current form	fOrms	F8	with scroll: (Back)Tab
REMOVE the current form	fOrms	Alt-R	to last detail: Alt-F4
SAVE a form	fOrms	F2	
SEARCH all forms for value	fOrms	Alt-F3	Utilities Alt-U
SPACE report on file	Utils		Zoom a column line Alt-Z
UNDO unvalidated data	Edit		Context-sens. help Alt-H
VALIDATE	Edit	F1	Pick List Alt-L

Figure 2-17

You may issue a command while viewing the menu by entering its abbreviation, or using the function key. To go back to your form, simply press escape.

LOCATE FORMS IN YOUR FILE

The quickest way to display a particular form in the file is by using the key item. The key item is specified when a form is designed and it is the data item by which the file is indexed. For example, to locate the form with the key JOY34521, start with a blank form:

1. Press  (clear); you'll see a blank form.
2. Move the cursor into ACCT# and type in JOY34521.
3. Now press . This tells the system to the form with this account number (Figure 2-18.)

```

                ALPHA TOOLS INC.
                SERVING THE BAY AREA SINCE 1925

CUSTOMER Chas Joyner      ACCT# JOY34521
ADDRESS 458 Bog Way      PHONE 453-5580
CITY Wheeling           STATE WV ZIP 24567
ORDER DATE 11/15/80     CLERK Art


L# QTY STOCK#↓ DESCRIPTION PRICE AMOUNT.
 1 11 B55   Nails      0.24   2.64
 2  6 A44   Elec. Drill 47.00 282.00
 3 20 V33   Screws     0.09   1.80
 4  8 A66   Measur Tape 3.75  30.00
 5 13 A22   Chisel Set 25.00 325.00
 6  7 A11   Hammer   12.50  87.50
 7  6 A77   Screwdriver 18.50 111.00
 8 ... ..

                                SUBTOTAL 839.94
                                TAX      42.00
                                TOTAL   881.94

Last Updated 11/15/80 13:45:00

```

Figure 2-18

Another way to retrieve a form from a file is to use the SEARCH command. This can be used when you do not know the key item for the form, but can remember some of the information on it. For example, suppose you want to locate Jane Steel's form, but remember only that Sam was the clerk who waited on her and sold her an electric drill. Again, you'll start with a blank form (use the command CLEAR, function key ).


```

                ALPHA TOOLS INC.
          SERVING THE BAY AREA SINCE 1925

CUSTOMER ..... ACCT# .....
ADDRESS ..... PHONE .....
CITY ..... STATE .. ZIP .....
ORDER DATE ..... CLERK Sam.....

L# QTY STOCK#↓ DESCRIPTION PRICE AMOUNT.
  1 ... A44... .....


                                SUBTOTAL .....
                                  TAX .....
                                  TOTAL .....

```

Figure 2-19

4. Move the cursor to the item CLERK on the blank form, and key in "Sam". Then, move the cursor to L# 1 under STOCK# and key in your code for the electric drill-- A44 (Figure 2-19).

5. Press   (SEARCH).

VersaForm XL will ask you where to start the search (use this only if you know something about the key, such as "it begins with W"). In this case you would just press . VersaForm will scan the file, display the first form that contains the values you entered, and ask if you want this form.

You will find that Sam has sold at least two other electric drills. First, you will see the form for Chas Carpenter (ACCT# CAR12344).

* Forms are searched according to their key items, alphabetically and numerically.

6. Answer F to continue the search; VersaForm XL will continue the search and display the next form with those values, which is Geo Sawyer's (ACCT# SAW33521).
7. Answer F; the third form displayed will be Jane Steel's (ACCT# STE12345).
8. Answer E, to end the search.

The symbols and instructions used to tell VersaForm XL what to SEARCH for, when using this command, are described in Chapter 5, "Filing - Data Entry and Retrieval."

Also explained in Chapter 5 are other commands used for the easy retrieval of forms . . . FIRST, LAST, NEXT, BACK, and INDEX.

You may also use the GET command to find a form without clearing the screen to a blank form. Try it with Jane Steel's form.

```


                ALPHA TOOLS INC.
                SERVING THE BAY AREA SINCE 1925

CUSTOMER Jane Steel      ACCT# COO87655
ADDRESS 123 Main St.    PHONE .....
CITY Elm Park           STATE IL ZIP 23456
ORDER DATE 10/21/83     CLERK Sam

L# QTY STOCK#↓ DESCRIPTION PRICE AMOUNT.
 1 1  100   Hammer      5.95   5.95
 2 2  A44   Elec. Drill  47.00  94.00
 3 2  A11   Hammer     12.50  25.00

```

Figure 2-20

9. Move the cursor to ACCT#; key in COO87655 over the old number (Figure 2-20).
10. Command GET (). You'll see the message in Figure 2-21.

```

                ALPHA TOOLS INC.
                SERVING THE BAY AREA SINCE 1925

CUSTOMER Jane Steel      ACCT# COO87655
 5 3  A55   Carbide Set  52.50  157.50
 6 ... .....

                                SUBTOTAL  298.35
                                TAX        14.92
                                TOTAL      313.27

----->Form not in file

```

Figure 2-21

This tells you that the ACCT# you entered doesn't belong to any of the forms in this file. And, VersaForm XL leaves the current form on the screen. We're looking for John Cooper's form, but we've forgotten his ACCT#. You can find the form another way:

11. Move the cursor back to the 8 in ACCT#. DO NOT erase the first three characters, COO. Space over the digits 87655 to remove them (Figure 2-22).

```

                ALPHA TOOLS INC.
                SERVING THE BAY AREA SINCE 1925

CUSTOMER Jane Steel      ACCT# COO      <-----
ADDRESS 123 Main St.    PHONE .....
CITY Elm Park           STATE IL ZIP 23456
ORDER DATE 10/21/83     Clerk Sam

```

Figure 2-22

12. Use the Command NEXT () . You'll see the NEXT form, the form that follows one with an ACCT# of COO in the file's index (Figure 2-23).

```

                ALPHA TOOLS INC.
                SERVING THE BAY AREA SINCE 1925

CUSTOMER John Cooper    ACCT# COO45678
ADDRESS 45 Church St.  PHONE 456-7890
CITY Centerville       STATE MN ZIP 34567
ORDER DATE 11/15/80    CLERK Joe

L# QTY STOCK#↓ DESCRIPTION PRICE AMOUNT.
 1 11 B55   Nails          0.24   2.64
 2  6 A44   Elec. Drill 47.00 282.00
 3  4 V33   Screws         0.09   0.36
 4 99 A99   Metric Skts 33.00 3267.00
 5 20 A33   Ratchet Wr   9.95 199.00
 6 ... ..

                                SUBTOTAL 3751.00
                                TAX      187.55
                                TOTAL 3938.55

```

Figure 2-23


This form, John Cooper's, was located by asking for the next form after COO. Even though there is no such ACCT# as COO in the file, the system can find the value "COO" in the Index and locate the next form.

You may wonder if you have altered Jane Steel's form in any way by using the key item to locate forms without clearing the screen first.

- * Jane Steel's form remains in the file, with its original number, unless you deliberately remove it (the command REMOVE is discussed later.)
- * If you keyed in a different account number (a new key item) over the original and then SAVED the change, you would simply add another form with the same information but a new account number.

CHANGE A COLUMN LINE

Now that John Cooper's form is displayed, practice changing some data on it. Suppose after Mr. Cooper placed his order, he called back and said, "Change my order from 20 Ratchet Wrenches to 25, and cancel the 4 screws." How do you make the changes on the form?


1. Move the cursor to Line #5 and key in 25 over the 20 under QTY.
2. VALIDATE ()

Notice the AMOUNT, SUBTOTAL, TAX and TOTAL change (Figure 2-24).

ALPHA TOOLS INC.						
SERVING THE BAY AREA SINCE 1925						
CUSTOMER		John Cooper		ACCT#	COO45678	
ADDRESS		45 Church St.		PHONE	456-7890	
CITY		Centerville		STATE	MN	ZIP 34567
ORDER DATE		11/15/80		CLERK	Joe	
L#	QTY	STOCK#↓	DESCRIPTION	PRICE	AMOUNT.	
1	11	B55	Nails	0.24	2.64	
2	6	A44	Elec. Drill	47.00	282.00	
3	4	V33	Screws	0.09	.36	
4	99	A99	Metric Skts	33.00	3267.00	
5	25	A33	Ratchet Wr	9.95	248.75	
6	...	.....	.....	.....	.....
				SUBTOTAL	3800.75	
				TAX	190.04	
				TOTAL	3990.79	
Entries checked- OK						

Figure 2-24

Now you need to DELETE the order for the screws.

3. Move the cursor to that line (line 3). Use the command DELETE--press .

4. VersaForm XL will blank out line 3 and ask for confirmation:

Correct? (Y/N)

At this point, you may change your mind. If you key in N, Line #3 will remain. If you key in Y, the line will be deleted, and the totals on the form will be recalculated automatically (Figure 2-25).

L#	QTY	STOCK#↓	DESCRIPTION	PRICE	AMOUNT.
1	11	B55	Nails	0.24	2.64
2	6	A44	Elec. Drill	47.00	282.00
3	99	A99	Metric Skts	33.00	3267.00
4	25	A33	Ratchet Wr	9.95	248.75
5	...	.....	.....	.....	.....
				SUBTOTAL	3800.39
				TAX	190.02
				TOTAL	3990.41

---->Line deleted

Figure 2-25

Now you must SAVE the changes to make them permanent.

- Use the command SAVE, (**F2**). The screen will be cleared.

REMOVE A FORM

At times you'll want to REMOVE a form from your permanent records. Suppose you want to remove a form with an ACCT# of FLE34567. First, retrieve it with GET as you did before.



- Move the cursor to ACCT#, key in FLE34567, and use the command GET (**F3**). The system will locate the form and display it with the message, "Last Updated (date & time)".

* You need to GET the form first because the REMOVE command removes the CURRENT form--the one displayed on the screen.

- Use the command REMOVE (**ALT R**). Now you'll be asked "Destroy this form? (Y/N)". VersaForm XL is giving you a chance to change your mind.
- Key in **Y** to indicate you do want this form removed.

Even though you've removed the form from the file, it will still be displayed on the screen. At this point, before you clear the screen or turn off the computer, you may still change your mind. If you see it on the screen, you can keep it.

- Command SAVE (**F2**). You'll see the message "New Form Saved" and the form will be restored to the file. You may check the Index to make sure (as explained in Chapter 5).

To return to the Main Menu, use the EXIT command (ESCAPE, F, X) or  . You may see the message "Ending transactions". You have finished the Hands-On Exercise in entering information.

Chapter 3

HANDS-ON EXERCISE: PREPARING A REPORT

Follow the instructions in Chapter 1 to start VersaForm XL.

1. Select #3, Reports, from the Main Menu. After you enter the drive and file name (use the same file-- SAMPLE --as in the previous exercise), you will see the following message:

```
Enter report name (up to 6 letters) or '?' for a list
> ?
```

2. Enter a new report name; the name can be up to six letters, so SAMPLE would be a good choice. VersaForm XL will confirm your choice for a new report. Answer "Y"; the report menu (figure 3-1) will appear.

```
Report Menu

1. Set Up the Report
2. Enter Selection Conditions
3. Include Additional Files
4. Run the Report
5. Remove this Report
6. Rename this Report
7. Copy Another Report
8. Choose Another Report
9. Return to the Main Menu
```

Figure 3-1

There are two main steps in creating a report. First, we must tell VersaForm which items to print, and second, under which conditions to include the items in the report.

CHOOSE THE ITEMS TO REPORT ON

3. Select #1, "Set up the Report", from the Report Menu.

When you press , a blank ALPHA TOOLS INC. form will be displayed (Figure 3-2).

```

                ALPHA TOOLS INC.
          SERVING THE BAY AREA SINCE 1925

CUSTOMER ..... ACCT# .....
ADDRESS ..... PHONE .....
CITY ..... STATE .. ZIP .....
ORDER DATE ..... CLERK .....


L# QTY STOCK# DESCRIPTION PRICE AMOUNT.
01 ... ..... ..... .....



                                SUBTOTAL .....
                                  TAX .....
                                  TOTAL .....

Choose print item #1: Rtn-Choose item, Q-done, ?-Help

```

Figure 3-2

The instruction at the bottom of the screen tells you to press  to choose the first item to print on the report. The order in which you choose the items is the order in which they'll be printed across each printed report page.

1. Press  until the cursor is at DESCRIPTION.
 - * If you mistakenly go past the item you want, use the arrow keys to move the cursor up, then press  again.
 - * Note the message at the bottom of the screen.
2. Press X. Then you'll be asked to repeat the same steps for the second item.
3. Move the cursor to QTY and press X. You'll be asked for your third choice.
4. In the same way, choose AMOUNT and CLERK.
 - * Note the message at the bottom of the screen.
5. Press Q to show that you're finished. A Report Definition form will be displayed showing the items to be printed (Figure 3-3).
6. Move the cursor into the item called "Title1."

7. Key in SALES ANALYSIS. This title will appear on each page of the report. VersaForm XL allows you up to three titles. For our example we will use only one.

```

-----
                                Screen 1
                                REPORT DEFINITION
                                -----
                                Form Id: sampleR1
Title1 SALES ANALYSIS
Title2
Title3
                                More Options ==>
                                (ctrl->)
Page Format:  Width      Length      Left Margin
              Skip      lines after titles      Counts (Y/N)
              Print-item Options
                                1-99 +/- Y/N Y/N Y/N
L#  ....Print-items..... Size .....Title..... J S Srt# Dir Sub Ttl Avg
1  Description              33 Description
2  Qty                      5 Qty
3  Amount                  10 Amount
4  Clerk                   8 Clerk
5
*
To choose more print items, use the command Fill (alt-F10)
Enter Print Control Sequences below (ctrl-PgDn)

```

Figure 3-3

HOW WILL THE DATA BE PRINTED?

VersaForm XL allows you to specify how the data will be printed on your report. You may specify Justify (J), Suppress (S), Sort (Srt#), and Sort Direction (Dir). These features are explained in detail in Chapter 7.

We will sort by DESCRIPTION.

1. Move the cursor to L# 1, under the Srt# column. Key in 1. This tells VersaForm XL to sort our print items by the values in DESCRIPTION. We use a number to indicate our SORTing choice and order because it is possible to sort by more than one item.

Items can be sorted alphabetically or numerically, in either direction.

2. Key in + under the column Dir to tell the system you want DESCRIPTION sorted from low to high, i.e., A to Z.


SELECTING ITEMS TO SUBTOTAL AND TOTAL.


VersaForm also allows you to specify which items will cause page breaks, subtotals (Sub), totals (Ttl), and averages (Avg).

We want subtotals printed for each different product DESCRIPTION, i.e., for each different product.



3. Move the cursor to the Sub column and enter "Y".

Description is a text data field, it is helpful to think of this type of a subtotal as telling VersaForm "where" to break. In some reports this might also be where we would want a page break, we would indicate this by entering "P". For this report, however, we have just indicated a subtotal or paragraph break.

Filling in a Report Definition is similar to entering data through VersaForm XL. When you finish making changes to a line in the Report Definition form, you must Validate () before making changes to a different line.

4. Press  to Validate the choices you made in L# 1.

Now we will tell VersaForm XL what items to total. This is done by moving the cursor to the line which contains the field we want to total, and entering "Y" in the Ttl column.

5. Move the cursor to L# 2, QTY, and tab to the Ttl column. Enter "Y" and Validate () .
6. Move the cursor to L# 3, AMOUNT and tab to the Ttl column. Again, enter "Y" and Validate () .

* It is possible to choose additional items to be totaled, but we'll stop with two.

Your Report Definition screen should look like the one in Figure 3-4. If it does not, move the cursor to the fields on the screen and key in the information from Figure 3-4. Remember to Validate when you make changes to a line.

```


-----
                                Screen 1
                                REPORT DEFINITION
                                -----
                                Form Id: SAMPLER1

Title1 SALES ANALYSIS
Title2
Title3
Page Format:  Width      Length      Left Margin
              Skip      lines after titles      Counts      (Y/N)
===== Print-item Options =====
                                1-99 +/- Y/N Y/N Y/N
L#  .....Print-items..... Size .....Title..... J S Srt# Dir Sub Ttl Avg
1  Description              33 Description              1 +   Y
2  Qty                      5 Qty                      Y
3  Amount                   10 Amount                   Y
4  Clerk                     8 Clerk
5

```

Figure 3-4

We have finished the first step in creating our report, telling VersaForm XL which items to print and how they should be printed. In the next section we will discuss the second step, telling VersaForm XL under which conditions items should be selected.

7. Command SAVE (). VersaForm XL will save the Report Control Instructions in your file and return to the report menu (Figure 3-1).

SELECT THE DATA YOU WANT

Now you will specify which data to extract from your file, by establishing "selection conditions".

1. From the Report Menu (Fig. 3-1), select #2, Enter Selection Conditions.

```

                ALPHA TOOLS, INC.
                Serving the Bay Area Since 1925


Customer ..... Acct# .....
Address: ..... Phone .....
City ..... State .. Zip .....
Order Date ..... Clerk .....

L# .Qty. ..Stock#.. .....Description..... ..Price.. ..Amount..
 1 ..... ..... ..... .....
 2 ..... ..... ..... .....
 3 ..... ..... ..... .....

Sub-Total .....
Tax .....
Total .....

Selection Condition #1 Test #1; Choose item to test: Rtn-Choose/?-Help/Q-done..
    
```

Figure 3-5

2. Press . Again, the ALPHA TOOLS form will be displayed with an instruction at the bottom of the screen (Figure 3-6).

```

                ALPHA TOOLS, INC.
                Serving the Bay Area Since 1925

Customer ..... Acct# .....
Address: ..... Phone .....
City ..... State .. Zip .....
Order Date ..... Clerk .....

L# .Qty. ..Stock#.. .....Description..... ..Price.. ..Amount..
 1 ..... ..... ..... .....
 2 ..... ..... ..... .....
 3 ..... ..... ..... .....

Sub-Total .....
Tax .....
Total .....

Move cursor to item, then press X .
    
```


Figure 3-6

3. Move the cursor to the item called AMOUNT. When the cursor is in the amount column, press X. The dots will turn to stars indicating you have made a choice.


This tells VersaForm XL you want the item called AMOUNT on each form to be tested; if the data meets the test you specify, you want the information extracted for the report.

Now the following tests will be displayed at the bottom of your screen:

Enter comparison type--EQ,NE,GT,GE,LT,LE,CO,EX,?:

4. Key in GE (Greater than or Equal to); then press . GE is the test. At the bottom of the screen you'll see:

Compare to: Rtn-another Item on the form, V-a Value, ?-Help

5. Key in V and press Rtn. This tells the system that you want to enter a value (V) to test AMOUNT against.
- * An item can be tested either against another item on the form, or against a value which you enter.
6. When you are told to "Type the value," key in 10.00. Press .



You have just finished setting up one "test" of a selection condition. Each test consists of three parts:

- * the item to test (AMOUNT);
- * the test itself (GE); and
- * the item or value to test against (10.00).

This tells VersaForm XL to extract the data from each form if: AMOUNT is Greater Than Or Equal To 10.00.

Now you will be asked if you want to enter a second test. Each selection condition can consist of up to 99 tests. We will enter two more tests following the same steps as above.


Selection Condition #1 Test #2; Choose item to test: Rtn-Choose/?-Help/Q-done

7. Press  to choose another item to test. Move the cursor to ORDER DATE, and press the letter X to indicate your choice. Read the prompt at the bottom of the screen.
8. Enter the comparison type GE, Greater than or Equal to, and press .
9. Enter V to tell VersaForm we will be comparing to a Value.






Suppose we want to select orders processed on a specific day, but we know we will want to run this same report every day, and sometimes every week. Using report variables will allow us to replace the date each time we produce the report, without changing or re-entering the report instructions.

10. Enter the report variable symbol, &, immediately followed by the variable to be replaced, date-from (&date-from).

* The "&" as used here is a "" symbol. It allows you to change the value to be tested against each time you run the report. VersaForm XL will replace "&" with the word "Enter". In this example, when you run the report, VersaForm will ask "Enter date-from". (Any word can be used following the "&".)


11. Press . You will see the message:

Selection Condition #1 Test #3; Choose item to test: Rtn-Choose/?-Help/Q-done

12. Press  to choose another item. We will select ORDER DATE again so we may specify a date range. Move the cursor to ORDER DATE and press X.
13. Enter the comparison type LE, Less than or Equal to. Press .
14. Select V for value and press .
15. Enter the value &date-to. Press  and read the prompt displayed at the bottom of the screen.
16. Key in Q to indicate you are done and press . After a moment, a Selection Condition Form, filled in, will be displayed. (Figure 3-7).


REPORT DEFINITION			
SELECTION CONDITION		FORM ID: sample1	Screen 1
		Is "Test_Against" an Item Name or a Value?	
Tests for this Selection Condition			
L#	.....Item_Testeds.....	Test	.....Test_Against..... N/V
1	Amount	ge 10.00	V
2	Order Date	ge &date-from	V
3	Order Date	le &date-to	V
4			
* Data will not be selected unless it passes ALL tests above.			
Edit this form or use the command FILL (alt-F10) to add more tests to this condition. When it is OK, SAVE (F2) this form.			
To add another selection condition, SAVE or use the command Next.			

Figure 3-7

17. SAVE () your entries. You'll be asked:

Enter another selection condition? (Y/N) N

Up to nine selection condition forms may be entered for each report, but we'll just enter one here.

18. Press . VersaForm XL will return you to the Report Menu. Now we are ready to produce the report.

Produce the Report

The current file you are reporting from and the current report are named at the top of the screen. It should look similar to Figure 3-8, showing the file and report name as, Sample.

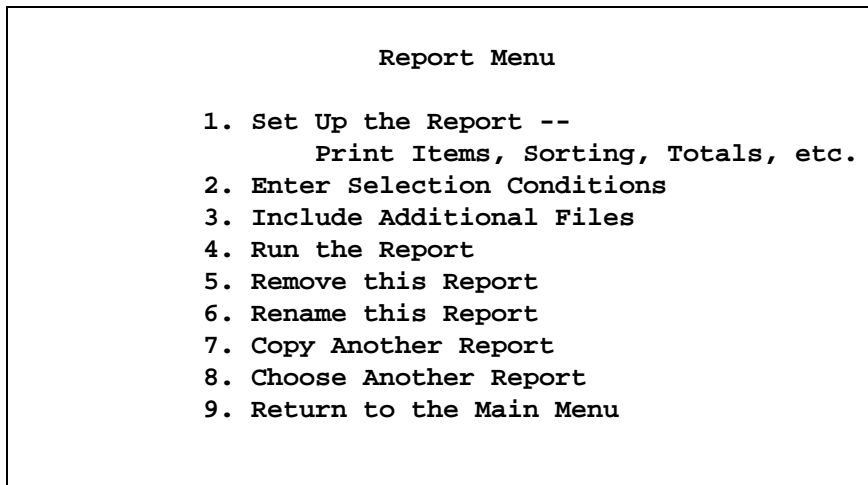



Figure 3-8

When we produce the report (i.e., print it), VersaForm XL will ask you to specify Report Options. Report Options are a set of instructions you may enter when a report is designed. If Report Options are not entered in a report, VersaForm XL uses a set of default options. In this example, we will be asked to answer the default Report Options. All VersaForm's Report Options, and how they may be entered will be discussed in Chapter 11 (Setup) and Chapter 7 (Reports).

1. Make sure your printer is turned on. Choose Option 4, "Run the Report", from the report menu.

```
Print control instructions? (Y/N)
```

2. Key in **Y** and press . A printed copy of the Report Control Instructions is a useful reference. It is a summary of the instructions you entered and saved for this report, Sample.

You will then be asked to supply the value for any variables you have specified -- in this case, the values for ORDER DATE (&date-from and &date-to).

```
Enter date-from
```


3. Key in the value 11/15/80 and return.

You will be asked:

```
Enter date-to
```

4. Key in 11/15/80.

Once the instructions have been entered, VersaForm XL can produce the report.

5. Press . You'll see a message similar to the following:


```
Report Complete.  
There are 21 detail lines to be printed.  
  
Print all the detail lines,  
or summaries (totals, etc.) only? (D/S) D
```

6. Key in D (Details) to have all the lines in the report printed. Another time, you may want to choose S to print just the Summaries--subtotals and totals only. You'll be asked:

```
Output to the Printer, Screen, or to a File? (P/S/F) P
```

7. Press Enter and VersaForm XL will print the report.

When the report is printed, you'll be asked:

```
Print the report again? (Y/N) N
```

You can have the report displayed on the screen once and then printed, or vice versa. Or, you may want to have more than one copy.

8. Enter **Y**, and the report will print again. OR, enter **N** to return to the report menu.
9. Press Esc (Escape) to return to the Main Menu.

You have finished the Hands-On Exercise in creating and running a report.

Part II

Using The VersaForm XL Database

Chapter 4

CREATE A FILE AND DESIGN A FORM

Form Design Overview

When you select FORM DESIGN from the Main Menu, you will be able to choose from several options on the Form Design menu.

- * You may design on the screen a new form that meets your special needs.
 - A new file will be created.
- * Change an existing form design.
 - Add or delete data items (fields) or change field lengths as your requirements change.
- * Copy a form design from another file.
 - This creates a new file with an existing form design.
- * Select checking and filling options for any items on your form.
 - When data is later entered into the form through the FILING function, VersaForm XL will check for accuracy and fill items in automatically.
- * Print the form definition.
 - A "hard copy" of your form design is a useful reference.

All these are described in this chapter except for the checking and filling option. This is described separately in Chapter 6, "Automatic Checking and Automatic Filling."

Designing a Form

1. From the Main Menu, select #1, Form Design. The Form Design menu will be displayed (Figure 4-1).

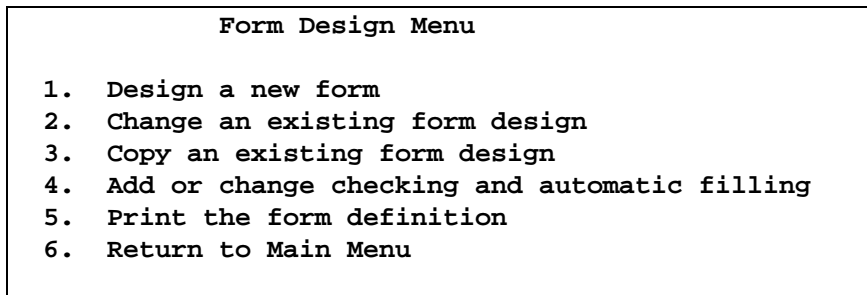


Figure 4-1

2. Select "Design a new form" from the Form Design menu.

VersaForm XL will ask for a name for the new file that will be created when the form is designed.

It must start with a letter, and may contain up to 8 characters. Optionally, you may add an "extension" to the file name consisting of a period and three characters (e.g., "FILENAME.VFM"). Don't use a slash or backslash (/ or \). Name files according to their contents, such as "PAYROL83."

3. Enter a name for the new file.

You will see a simple form design, and you'll be asked if you need additional help designing forms (Figure 4-2).

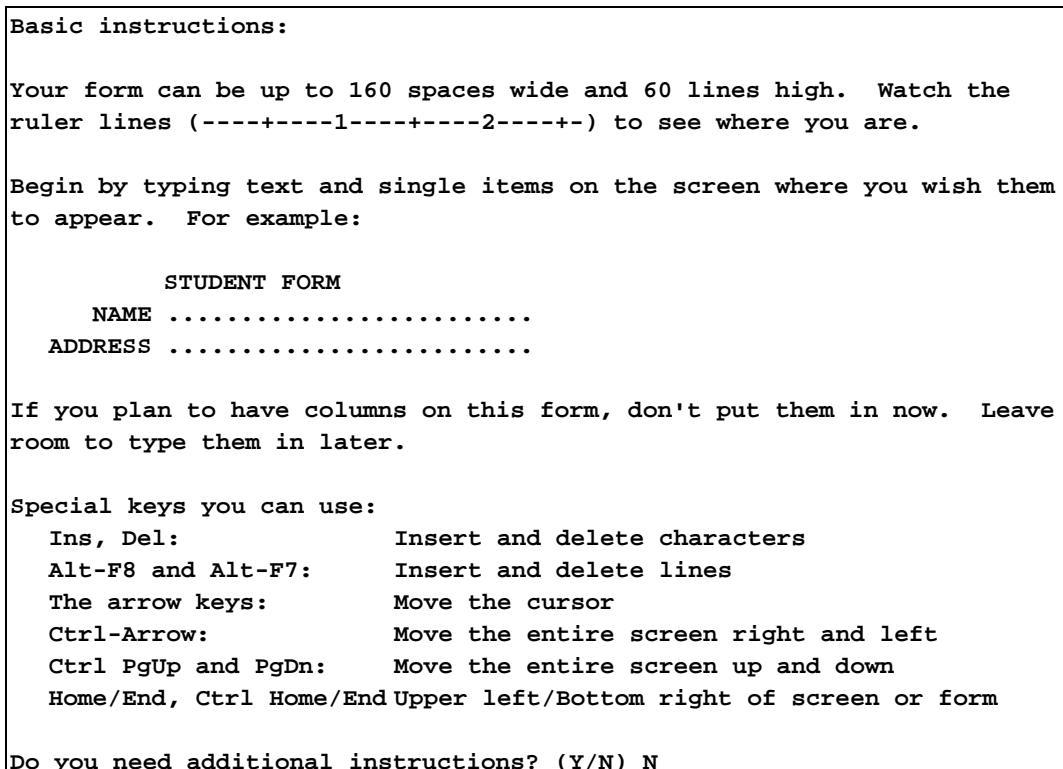



Figure 4-2

1. Press **Y** or **N** and then . Selecting **Y** will produce instructions for designing a form (similar to those printed in this manual).
2. When you are finished reading instructions, you'll be asked to specify the form width and depth.

```
Enter the form width 160
```

```
Enter the form depth 60
```

3. After specifying the form size you will have a blank screen on which to design your form. The cursor will appear at the top of the screen, and at the bottom will be the message below:

```
Design the single items. Press Esc to end or for help.
```

NOTE: You may use a 160 column wide by 60 lines high display space to design your form. This is, of course, too big for the screen. When you move the cursor to the edge of the screen, it will automatically scroll. Scrolling may be controlled by using the cursor control keys, discussed in Chapter 1.

Neither of these limits affect filling out your pre-printed form, as you will later design a print format which can print forms much wider than the screen.

TEXT AND SINGLE ITEMS

TEXT refers to words such as headings, messages, and comments, which do not contain data.

SINGLE ITEMS are non-columnar fields which are going to be filled in with data. (Columnar fields will be discussed later.)

TEXT

- * Place it anywhere on a form.
- * Separate text from single items by at least TWO spaces.

SINGLE ITEMS

- * Consist of a NAME and a ROW OF DOTS, separated by one blank space.



- * Each name must be UNIQUE, should start with a letter of the alphabet and can contain up to 20 characters.

TEXT>----->	
TEXT>----->	
SINGLE ITEMS >-->	NAME ID#
SINGLE ITEMS >-->	ADDRESS
SINGLE ITEMS >-->	CITY STATE .. ZIP
SINGLE ITEMS >-->	AREA CODE ... PHONE EXT
SINGLE ITEM >-->	SALES REP
	(Space left for columns)
SINGLE ITEM >-->	SUBTOTAL
SINGLE ITEM >-->	TAX
SINGLE ITEM >-->	TOTAL

Figure 4-3

- * A row of dots represents the length of the data item. Each dot is a space which may later be filled in by a letter or digit.
- * The name and row of dots are SEPARATED BY A SINGLE SPACE.
- * There must be at least ONE space between the end of the row of dots and the name of the next item when they are on the same line.
- * If the item names are short, there will be room on the form and in the computer's memory for more items. Combining items or reducing the amount of text will also allow more room.


NOTE: In the sample form (Fig. 4-3), columns are planned for the space between single items and SUBTOTAL. Remember to leave space where you plan to insert column headings, as discussed later.

- * When designing a form, you may insert and delete lines using  and . These only affect the screen in view, not the whole form.

EXAMPLES OF SINGLE ITEMS

Right!	
<pre> NAME STREET CITY STATE .. ZIP</pre>	<p>Each single item consists of a unique name, a single space, and a row of dots.</p>

Wrong!	
<pre> NAME..... ADDRESS ADDRESS STATE ..ZIP</pre>	<p>No space after NAME or between STATE and ZIP. ADDRESS is used as a name twice. One line of dots has no name.</p>

In the example above, VersaForm XL will call attention to the omission of the space after NAME, and automatically insert the space when you press .

Most other errors in defining single items will cause the system to issue an error message. For example, the second mistake in the form above would cause an error message similar to Figure 4-4.

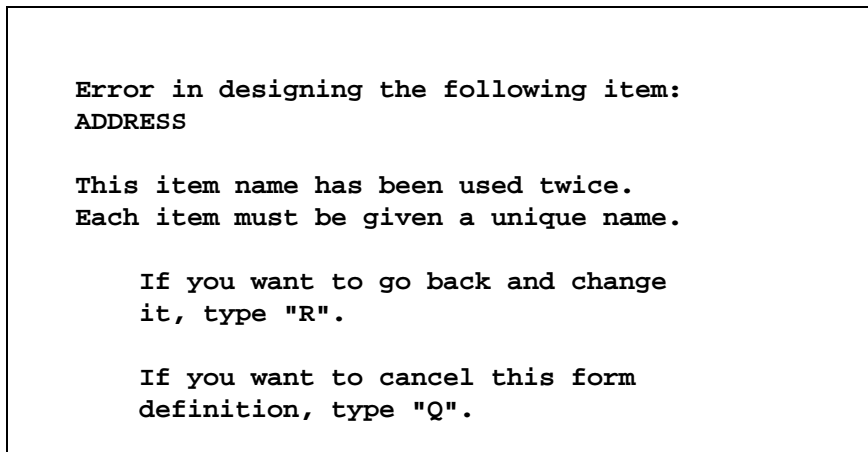


Figure 4-4

Enter Text and Single Items

1. Key in text and single items.

* If you make a typing error, just reposition the cursor and type over the wrong characters. Use the space bar to get rid of extra characters.

2.. When you are done, press Escape, then press Enter.

* VersaForm XL will process the form design and display it. Asterisks replace dots when the items have been designed correctly (Figure 4-5).

```

                ALPHA TOOLS, INC.
                Vendor List

NAME ***** ID# *****
ADDRESS *****
CITY ***** STATE ** ZIP *****
AREA CODE *** PHONE ***** EXT *****
SALES REP *****

                SUBTOTAL *****
                   TAX *****
                   TOTAL *****

C-Confirm, R-Redesign, Q-Quit, ?-Help

```

Figure 4-5

3. Inspect the form for correctness and choose one of the options at the bottom of the screen. If you key in

?, (Help), instructions will be displayed.

Q, the file will be erased and you will be returned to the FORM DESIGN menu.

R, you'll be able to redesign the form.

C, the form will reappear on the screen with the dots in place, and you'll go on to the next step, choosing a key item.

The Key

The key is the item or pair of items VersaForm XL uses to identify each form in a file.

VersaForm XL always stores forms according to their key item.

A KEY ITEM


- * Must be an item or combination of two items that is **UNIQUE** for each form.
- * Must contain **BETWEEN 3 and 40 CHARACTERS**.
- * Is usually placed near the top of a form for quick reference.

In the Alpha Tools form in Figure 4-3, ID# would make a good key item. NAME wouldn't be quite as good, since two people could have the same name. It could be used if one were sure this would not happen.

TWO PART KEYS

If a single item will not be sufficient to identify a form, two different items may be chosen as the key. Together, they may contain up to 40 characters. For example, NAME and ID# could be used as a two-part key item. This would have the advantage that the file would be kept in alphabetical order by NAME, making searching easy.

CHOOSING THE KEY

1. Press  until the cursor is at the item you want to use as the key item.
2. Press **X** to indicate your choice.
3. Key in **Y** to confirm your choice. Then you'll be asked:

Add a second part to the key? (Y/N) **N**

4. Key in **Y** or **N**. If you choose a second item, confirm it as you did the first.

NOTE: If you find that the form does not contain an item suitable as the key, redesign it and add one. You may key in ? for instructions on redesigning items.

Columns

The system will now ask you if the form is to have columns. If you reply N, your design is complete and you will be given information about the size of the form (Figure 4-8).

If you reply Y, the form will reappear on the screen, showing the single items and text; you will be instructed to move the cursor to the line on which you want the column headings.

* Columns may be placed on any line of the form except a line containing single items.

ENTERING COLUMN HEADINGS

1. Press the up or down arrow until the cursor is on the line where you want to place the column headings. Press X. VersaForm XL will automatically fill in the notation "L#" on the line you select.

2. Enter all column headings on the same line (Figure 4-6).

* Each column must have a heading.

* Each column heading must be separated from the one next to it by at least one space.

* No spaces are allowed WITHIN column headings. To separate words, use an underscore (recommended) or a hyphen or slash--not a dot or space.

* A column name can contain up to 20 characters.

* Use dots, as shown in Figure 4-6, to extend the column width to contain more characters than the column name. (VersaForm XL will automatically center the headings).

ALPHA TOOLS, INC.					
SERVING THE BAY AREA SINCE 1925					
NAME	.....	ID#	.....	
ADDRESS	.....			
CITY	.....	STATE	..	ZIP	.....
AREA CODE	...	PHONE	.....	EXT	.....
SALES REP	.....			
L#	QTY	.STOCK#.	.DESCRIPTION.	.PRICE..	.AMOUNT.
				SUBTOTAL	.....
				TAX	.....
				TOTAL	.....

Figure 4-6


NOTE: A form can have more column line entries than fit the LENGTH of the screen. Additional pages are provided by VersaForm XL as data is entered.

If DATE is a column item, allow at least 8 spaces for the correct VersaForm XL format (Figure 4-7).

PATIENT NAME Jones John Morris.....		
ADDRESS 748 Park Avenue.....		
CITY Webster..... STATE CA ZIP 95729....		
L#	..DATE..	....DESCRIPTION... .CHG/PMT
1	10-31-83	Office Visit..... ...30.00
2	11-07-83	Check Received.... ...30.00
3	11-14-83	Office Recheck.... ...15.00

Figure 4-7

COLUMN LINES

1. Press  after keying in column headings. VersaForm XL will process your entries, centering column headings and adding numbered column lines.

Your form will be displayed on the screen. The dots will be replaced by asterisks, and column lines will be added. The dots will reappear after the design is confirmed.

2. Check the design of your form. Are all the columns set up the way you want them to be? Is there at least one space between each column heading?
3. Key in:
 - * Q if you want to quit and cancel this form design.
 - * ? to see instructions on the screen.
 - * R to redesign the form.
 - * C to confirm; you will be given information about the size of the form you've designed (Figure 4-8).

```

The form has now been designed.

Form display size: XXX characters wide by XX lines
If not compressed, form requires at lease XX bytes (X
storage units).
Column line size: XXX characters
Maximum possible column lines per form: XXX

                If desired, enter limit on the number
                of column lines: XXX

Press Return to continue

```

Figure 4-8

You may limit the number of column lines that can be stored on any form by entering a limit as displayed in Figure 4-8.

Press  to continue designing the form.

If you confirm the design but want to redesign it later, follow the instructions in the section of this chapter called "Change the design of a form."

When you confirm, your form is established and you will be asked two more questions (Figure 4-9).

```

Do you want to prevent form deletions
and column line changes? (Y/N) N

Is this file to be protected? (Y/N) N

```

If you want users to be able to change information in the column area of the form and delete forms from the system, press Enter in response to the first question.

If you want to restrict form access to only those users specified in the USERS.VFS file, answer 'Y' to the second question. Under normal circumstances your response will be 'N'. (See Chapter 11, Setup and Security.)

NOTE: It is a good idea to print the form definition when you are finished designing it or changing it; it is a useful reference for many operations. Refer to the section, later in this chapter, called "Print the form definition."

Change The Design Of A Form

You may redesign the items on a form **ONLY BEFORE** data has been stored.

From the FORM DESIGN menu, choose "Change an existing form design." You'll go through the same process as designing a new form.

After changing the form itself, you will have an opportunity to change its size--that is, to make it wider than 160 characters (up to 255) or longer than 60 (up to 255) lines, provided that the width times the length is not greater than 9600.

If you want to change the design of a form--to add or delete items, or to change the length of one or more items--AFTER data has been stored:

1. Copy the form design to another file (choose "Copy an existing form design" from the Form Design menu; the procedure is discussed below.) The form design, but no data, will be copied.
2. Choose "Change an existing form design" from the FORM DESIGN menu to redesign the layout of items on the copy. (Data from the old file will later be transferred only between items of the same name, so do not change the names of items you want to keep.)
3. Use the COPY BY NAME function described in Chapter 9, "Copy Forms and Data," to transfer data from the old file to the new one.

Copy An Existing Form Design

Once you have designed a form for one file, you may also use it in another file by copying the design.

It's better to copy a form than to design it again, since a copy is sure to match the original.

To copy a form design:

1. From the Form Design menu, select "Copy an existing form design".
2. Enter the name of your new file just as if you were designing a new form.

VersaForm XL will create the file and begin the copying process.


* Checking and automatic filling specifications will also be copied onto the new file. If you wish, Report Control Instructions, Print Formats, and Procedures will be copied too.

This procedure does NOT copy data when it copies the form design. To transfer data from one form to another, use the COPY BY NAME function. (See Chapter 9, "Copy Forms and Data.")

Delete an Existing Form Design

There is no command in VersaForm XL to delete a form design, or an entire file. This should be done from DOS with the DELete command. Be sure to have a

good copy of the form design, and any data that you want to keep transferred to a new file before DELEting a file.

From the DOS prompt type DEL followed by a space, then the name of the file to delete, then press .

Checking And Automatic Filling

Automatic checking and filling options can be added to or changed on your form at any time, whether or not data has been entered.

The procedure is described in Chapter 6, "Automatic Checking and Automatic Filling."

Print The Form Definition

You may have VersaForm XL print a copy of the form design: a complete record including the layout of items and all the checking and automatic filling rules.

1. From the FORM DESIGN menu, choose "Print the form definition".
2. Turn on the printer.
3. Enter the file name when requested.
 - * The form design will be printed immediately. You will then be asked if you also want to print the checking and filling options you have chosen.

It's wise to print the form definition soon after the form is designed, and keep the printout as a "hard copy" reference.


Chapter 5

FILING -- DATA ENTRY AND RETRIEVAL

After you've created a file and designed a form, use the Filing function to enter data. This function is also used to retrieve forms from your file and to examine, update, print, or remove them.

1. Start up the system. Select FILING from the Main Menu.
2. Enter the name of the file, if asked.

When a blank form is displayed, you may begin entering data.

Keying information into a form is like typing. The cursor marks the place where the next character will be entered. The tab key moves the cursor from item to item. If the next item is not visible on the screen, the screen will scroll to make that item visible. The  key acts similarly, but does not scroll.

You may also move the cursor by pressing the space bar - but remember that this will erase any data you space over.


VERSAFORM XL COMMANDS

In VersaForm XL, there are two ways to enter a command: pressing a function key and using the command menu.

1. Most of the commands can be activated by pressing a function key. The list of commands and function keys is shown in Fig 5-1.

COMMAND	MENU	FUNCTION KEY	VersaForm XL v.7
BACK one form (Continue)	fOrms	F5 (Alt-F5)	To RETURN, press ESC
CALCulator	Utils	F7	
CLEAR to blank form	fOrms	F9	To MOVE THE SCREEN:
Columns Up/Down	--	Ctrl-F5/F6	Up: Ctrl-PgUp
DELETE a line	fOrms	Alt-F7	Down: Ctrl-PgDn
DISPLAY primary/second form	Edit	Alt-F10	Right: Ctrl- ->
EXECUTE a procedure	Procs	Alt-F1	Left: Ctrl- <-
EXIT (to main menu)	File	Alt-X	
FIRST/LAST form in file	fOrms		To MOVE THE CURSOR:
GET a form	fOrms	F3	Arrow key
HELP	Help	F10	This line: Home, End
INDEX list	fOrms	F4	Corners:
INSERT a line	Edit	Alt-F8	Home-Home, End-End
NEXT form (Continue)	fOrms	F6	To/From Command: Esc
Page Forward/Backward	--	Pg Dn/Up	Next item : Enter
PRINT current form	fOrms	F8	with scroll: (Back)Tab
REMOVE the current form	fOrms	Alt-R	to last detail: Alt-F4
SAVE a form	fOrms	F2	
SEARCH all forms for value	fOrms	Alt-F3	Utilities Alt-U
SPACE report on file	Utils		Zoom a column line Alt-Z
UNDO unvalidated data	Edit		Context-sens. help Alt-H
VALIDATE	Edit	F1	Pick List Alt-L

Figure 5-1

To display the command menu, just press Escape. Then enter the command you want, and press . You will see the main command menu, at the top of the screen:



```
File fOrms Edit Run Utilities Help
```

From this menu, choosing an item causes a drop-down menu to appear. As you move through the items, you can see the submenus. Choose the command you want from the drop-down menu.






The mouse can also be used call up the command menu. If you move the mouse to the top line of your form, outside of any field, and click, the command menu will pop up. Then you can choose commands by clicking on them. Clicking outside the menu will remove it.

Data Entry Commands

ZOOM

Function key  

The ZOOM function allows editing of a column line in the single-item format. This is a great convenience when the column area is too wide to fit on a single screen.

ZOOM actually creates a small form that contains all the column items, and pops it up in a window that the user can edit. When the user validates, the data are moved to their normal place on the form. ZOOM is activated and de-activated by . When zoomed,  (PgUp) and  (PgDn) are used to move up or down a line.  and  can be used too. Any command that changes the form on display (Next, Clear, etc.) forces deactivation of the ZOOM.

VALIDATE (EDIT MENU)




Function key 

The VALIDATE command does three things.

1. It checks your data entries against the checking specifications that were set up when the form was designed.
2. It performs any calculations and automatic filling that you requested when you designed the form. Automatic checking and automatic filling are discussed in Chapter 6.
3. If you have written any procedures that were intended to be executed during the validation process, VALIDATE will invoke them. See Part III for information about procedures.


For example, if you used the Mandatory check to specify that an item **MUST** be filled in, VersaForm XL won't allow you to leave the item blank. If you haven't entered data, VersaForm XL will detect the error when you attempt to VALIDATE. You'll hear a "beep" and see an error message. You may then return to the item and add the required data.

TO ENTER DATA ON A FORM:


1. Key data into the single items on the form, and fill in the first column line if the form has columns. (On forms with automatic filling, you will see only one blank column line at a time; new ones will appear after each validation.)
 - * The column area can be moved up and down one line at a time. Function keys  and  are assigned to perform this function.
2. VALIDATE ().
 - * VersaForm XL will tell you if your entries do not meet the data checking specifications you have set.
3. Continue to fill in column lines, VALIDATING after each line.

NOTE: The VALIDATE command CHECKS the entries you've made--it DOES NOT save them. You must use the SAVE command to save your entries on the disk.

SAVE (FORMS MENU)




Function key 

Use the SAVE command to have VersaForm XL store the data on the disk. Otherwise, your entries will be lost.

- * If you haven't VALIDATED first, SAVE will VALIDATE your entries automatically.
- * You can SAVE () at any time; you needn't fill in a form completely before using the SAVE command.

After you SAVE, VersaForm XL will respond:

Form saved

In the multi-user version of VersaForm XL there are two forms of the SAVE command: SAVE (SA, or function key  ) and SAVE-CONTINUE (SC, or function key ). SAVE saves a form and ends the current transaction, releasing locks on all forms on the screen, and downgrading that lock to a shared lock. SAVE-CONTINUE saves the form but does not end the transaction, and releases no locks. The screen is unchanged.

See Chapter 12 for more about transactions and locks.

A word of caution: If you turn off the computer before you SAVE, the data you've just entered will NOT have been stored and the lock is not removed. If you use another command, such as CLEAR or GET, VersaForm XL will warn you with the message "Form not saved-OK to go on? (Y/N)". If you reply Y, VersaForm XL will continue with your instruction, without saving.



WHAT IF YOU MAKE A MISTAKE?

If you make a typing error, just reposition the cursor over the incorrect character(s) and retype. If the new characters don't completely cover the old, erase any that are left over by spacing over them.

UNDO (EDIT MENU)

The UNDO (formerly ERASE) command erases all data entries that haven't yet been validated. It returns your form to its state following the last validation.

DELETE (D)

Function key  

The DELETE command removes column data that has already been validated.

NAME	A.B. Smith	PHONE	415-207-3049	
ADDRESS	123 Main St.	CITY	Anytown	
ST CA	ZIP 93028-1374	ACCT#	00-30595	
L#	..DATE..	CODE	....SERVICE....	.CHARGE.
01	04/06/83	4398	Complete Workup	25.00
02	05/07/83	4270	Examination	15.00
03	07/01/83	4376	Blood Test	20.00

Figure 5-2

In Figure 5-2, suppose you decide to remove the data on Line 2. But since you have already validated that line, you cannot UNDO the entries. You may return the cursor to Line 2 and key different information over what you've already entered. Or, use the DELETE command to remove all the entries in the line.

Delete will ask for the line number (2, in this case). After entering it, you will be asked to confirm:

```
Delete line number : 2 OK? (Y/N)
```

Enter Y. Line 2 will be deleted, and Line 3 will be moved up to its position and renumbered 2.

CLEAR (EDIT MENU)

Function key 

The CLEAR command replaces the current form (showing on the screen) with a blank form. If the current form has not been SAVED, VersaForm XL will issue a warning message.


INSERT (EDIT MENU)

Function key  

The INSERT command inserts a new (empty) column line at the location you designate.

PAGE FORWARD

Function key  (PgDn)

If you are filling in a form, column line by line, and a new line does not appear when you validate, use  to get another page.

PAGE BACKWARD

Function key  (PgUp)

To return to a page you've previously completed, use  .

To Fill In Another Form In The Same File

After you've saved a form, you may want to fill in another one. For each new form, repeat these steps:

1. Use the CLEAR command. A blank form will be displayed and you may enter data as before.
2. VALIDATE if you want VersaForm XL to check your entries and perform automatic filling and calculations.
3. SAVE_CONTINUE when you're finished entering data to have your form filed.

If most of the data on one form is to be repeated on another, you can save time by retaining the information that is the same. Do not CLEAR the screen. Just delete the information you don't want to include on the second form, and enter whatever new data you want to add. VersaForm XL will recognize this as a new form because the key item will be different.

To Print the Form


You can print a copy of a form at any time. A form may be printed just as it appears on the screen, or in a special print format so that it matches a preprinted

form or label. (See Chapter 8, "Print on Preprinted Forms," for instructions on how to create a print format.)

PRINT (FORMS MENU)

FUNCTION KEY

1. Make sure the paper is aligned and the printer is on.
2. Command PRINT. VersaForm XL will ask for the name of a print format; you can either type the name or just type ? to get a list of the print formats you have established. If you choose not to use a print format, the form will be printed just as it appears on the screen.

If you have chosen to use a print format, the next time you print, VersaForm XL will display the name of the print format last entered. Just press  to accept the default print format, or type in the name of a new one.

Retrieve Forms

THE ARRANGEMENT OF FORMS IN A FILE

VersaForm XL establishes an Index when a file is created, and automatically updates it when forms are added or removed. The Index lists all the key items in order.

Numeric keys are indexed from low to high; dates are in chronological order; words, names, and other character strings are indexed alphabetically.

* For example, if NAME is the key item, the forms will be arranged in this order:


1. Betty Smith	3. William Ames
2. Jack Jones	4. Yolanda Wells

If you want the forms indexed by last name, then enter the NAME as:


1. Ames, William	3. Smith, Betty
2. Jones, Jack	4. Wells, Yolanda

If more than one type of key appears in an index, the numeric keys will be first, then the dates, then any others.

INDEX (FORMS MENU)

Function key 

One of the easiest ways to retrieve forms is to use the INDEX command. Index will display a menu of all forms in the file, arranged by key item. Just choose the form you want and it will be immediately displayed.

When you choose the INDEX command, you'll be asked for a starting point. If you just press , you'll start at the beginning of the index. But if the file is large, and you're looking for, say Smith, John, you don't want to scan the entire index. In this case you would just respond with S or maybe SM to see the index beginning at that point.


If the index extends to more than one page, the PgUp and PgDn commands can be used to page through the index entries.

USING THE KEY ITEM DIRECTLY


You may request a particular form by using the key item. Use the CLEAR command first to get a blank form.

If you know the exact key, you can use the GET command. If you don't know the exact key but you do know it approximately, you can use NEXT.


GET (FORMS MENU)

Function key 

The command GET uses the key item to locate and display a form.

1. Enter the entire key item data for the form you want to see directly into the appropriate blank(s) on the screen. (If your form has a two-part key, enter BOTH items.)
2. Press Esc/O/G (or .

NEXT (FORMS MENU)

Function key 

NEXT can be used to retrieve a form when you don't know the exact key. For example - The key item is the account number; John Smith's account number is SMI22438. You can't remember the whole key, but you know that it starts with SM.

1. Key SM into the account number (make sure the rest of the account number is blank).



2. Use the command NEXT.

VersaForm XL will search the index for a key of SM, then display the next form whose key comes after SM alphabetically. It's just like using a dictionary.

Perhaps the next one isn't John Smith's, but Charles Smathers', with a key of SMA21003. This form would be found first because its key is between SM and SMI. Just continue to use NEXT until the form you need is displayed.

If the key is a number, you must use a full length number as a starting point. For instance, if you know that the key you want is a three-digit number in the nine-hundreds, key in 900, not 9. If you keyed in 9, NEXT would look for 10, not 901.

SEARCH (FORMS MENU)

Function key  

SEARCH is the command to use when you don't know the key at all. It is slower than INDEX, GET or NEXT, but it can locate forms based on any item on the form. In fact, you can test more than one item, and you can look for items that are greater than or less than a value you specify, or even items that contain (or don't contain) certain letters.

When a blank form from the file you want to examine is displayed:

1. Move the cursor to the item which will contain the information to search for, and enter just the values you want found.
2. Command SEARCH.

For example, enter "BAKER" in the item NAME; VersaForm XL will display, one by one, all forms which contain those letters in the item, NAME. Both "JIM BAKER" and "JANE'S bakery" would be found.

You can also search on column items.

Before it starts the search, VersaForm XL will ask you where to start the search. If you can give a key from which to start, this will save time. For instance, if the file you are searching is indexed by zip code, and you know that the record you are searching for is on the West Coast, you could start your search with 90000, and the system wouldn't have to search the zip codes between 00000 and 89999. Remember, this only applies to values of the primary key field.

VersaForm XL will scan the file, and display the first form that matches the values you entered, and ask if you want this form. If the data that matched was a column line, you have a choice of going on to the next matching line, the next form, or stopping the search.

3. Reply E, F, or L.

If you reply L (next Line), VersaForm XL will continue the search beginning at the next line of the current form, and display the next match.

If you reply F (next Form), VersaForm XL will continue the search beginning at the first line of the next form, and display the next match.

If you reply E (End search), VersaForm XL stops the search. You may enter or delete data on the displayed form, or use any of the usual commands to work on your file. After you examine one form, you may clear the screen and resume the search.

You may resume a search at any point in the file. Simply use the last key that was found as the starting point for the next search.

The search can be interrupted by pressing Esc. You will be prompted with the question, "End the search? (Y/N) N". By responding "Y" you can stop the search.

Search tests may be entered in a number of ways, as illustrated in Figure 5-3.

Entry	Instruction
99	Search for the value that contains 99
=99	Search for the value that equals 99
<99	Search for any value less than 99
<=99	Search for any value less than or equal to 99
>99	Search for any value greater than 99
>=99	Search for any value greater than or equal to 99
99..	Search for any value which begins with 99
..99	Search for any value which ends with 99
/99	Search for any value not equal to 99
..99..	Search for any value which contains 99
/..99..	Search for any value not containing 99

Figure 5-3

The symbol / (not) could be used in all the examples, as illustrated by the two values at the bottom of the table.

You can put in more than one value for VersaForm XL to search for: Keying ">=T" into NAME and "95030" into ZIP would instruct VersaForm XL to search and display the forms of all clients in Zip code 95030 whose names begin with T or any letter that follows T in the alphabet.

If more than one item in the column area is being searched, the system will stop on the first form with correct single items and with at least one column item that matches all the criteria.

You can also use a ? to represent any single character or number.

9?9 would locate forms with 909, 919, 929, 939, etc.

Peters?n would produce all forms with either Peterson or Petersen in the item you have chosen for the search.

Browse Through a File

The commands FIRST, LAST, NEXT and BACK allow you to scan a file form by form.


FIRST (FORMS MENU)

The command FIRST displays the first form in a file.

LAST (FORMS MENU)

The command LAST displays the last form in a file.

NEXT (FORMS MENU)

Function key 

The command NEXT (discussed above) displays the form with the next higher key.

BACK (FORMS MENU)

Function key 

The command BACK allows you to examine the previous form in a file (the one with the next lower key).

Other Commands

REMOVE (FORMS MENU)

Function key  

When you want to remove a form from a file, have it displayed and then use the REMOVE command.

NOTE:After removing a form, it will still be on the screen. WHILE THE FORM IS STILL DISPLAYED, you may change your mind about removing it. Once the screen is cleared, it's too late.



If you change your mind, just SAVE the form.

SPACE REPORT (UTILS MENU)

The SPACE REPORT command tells how much of the available storage in a file has been used.

```
Size of <filename> is xx bytes
```

EXIT (FILE MENU)

Function key  



When you want to stop working on a file:

1. SAVE your entries.
2. Choose the EXIT command. You may use the Filing program to select and work on another file, or you may use another VersaForm XL function, or turn the system off.

Procedures


Procedures are short programs you can write to link one file to another, or to do things that can't be done by the standard VersaForm XL commands. They are discussed fully later in this book. Some procedures (called User procedures) can be executed on command.

RUN PROCEDURE (RUN MENU)


Function key  

This command (formerly EXECUTE) is used to run a VersaForm XL user procedure. After the command, VersaForm XL will ask:

```
Execute what procedure:?
```

Enter the name of the user procedure you want to execute or use a question mark to have VersaForm XL display a menu of available procedures. After the first time you EXECUTE a procedure, the name of that procedure becomes the default name and is displayed each time you type EX. You can just press  to execute the default, or enter the name of another procedure.



SWITCH FILE (FILE MENU)

Function key 

VersaForm XL has the capability to edit (i.e., to enter data and to make file changes) in more than one file. This command (formerly DISPLAY) presents a list of the open files and lets you open new ones. Once you switch to a new file, you can use all the filing commands on it, including VALIDATE and SAVE. You can execute procedures on the new file as well.

If you are on a file other than the primary file (the first one opened), and command EXIT, you get the same menu of files as you get when you switch files. If you choose a file from this menu (i.e., if you don't escape) the file you EXIT from is closed.

There are three ways to switch to a new file without leaving Filing.

- * by the SWITCH FILE command (.
- * by EXITing () from a file other than the primary file. That file will be closed, and the list of open files will be presented as for SWITCH FILES.
- * by calling a procedure that displays a secondary file. This works because the last secondary file is left open when the procedure chain ends, if it is displayed.

A procedure's secondary file that is not displayed when the procedure chain ends is automatically closed (this is a change from earlier versions). The display command will no longer automatically switch to the old secondary file; you must name it.

The Calculator

VersaForm XL provides a calculator for "scratch pad calculations" while the form is displayed.

CALCULATE (UTILS MENU)

Function key 

When you use the Calculate command, the normal line at the bottom of your screen is replaced by the "calculator display" area.




Calc

You may key in ? to see the calculator command line, which will appear in place of the calculator display area:

Calc: ?,P,=,+,-,*,/,S,R,I,N,T,C,V,Q


If you type ? again you will see a more detailed help screen.

PERFORM ARITHMETIC OPERATIONS

1. Key in any number. It will automatically be placed in the left hand space in the calculator display area.
 - * Calculator functions can be performed regardless of the position of the cursor.
2. Press . The cursor will return to its previous position on the form.
3. Key in another number. (The first one will move to the right.) Press . (If you're going to perform arithmetic operations, you don't need to press  first.)
4. Key in "+", "-", "*" (multiply), or "/" (divide). VersaForm XL will calculate the answer and display it in the left hand space.
 - * Arithmetic operations are performed on the two numbers to the left. Numbers on the right remain unchanged, but move to the left after a calculation is performed.
 - * Addition and multiplication are done in the usual way. In division, the number to the left is the divisor. In subtraction, the number to the left is subtracted from the number on the right.


ERRORS



If an error occurs, you'll hear a "beep." Usually you'll realize what's wrong--perhaps a number is too large for the space you're trying to assign it to, or maybe you've tried to divide by zero. If you don't understand, though, press ? to see an error message on the screen, indicating what is wrong.

NOTE: In order to receive an error message, you must press ? RIGHT AFTER the "beep." To continue, press .

OTHER CALCULATOR COMMANDS

- * CLEAR (C) erases the number in the left hand space in the calculator display area. Numbers on the right will move to the left. Using CLEAR repeatedly empties all the spaces.
- * ROUNDING (R) asks VersaForm XL to round a number; for example:

Key in 98.8999. Press . Key in R. You'll see the message "Round to how many places?" Key in the number. Thus, if you key in 2, the number will be rounded to 98.90.
- * NEGATIVE (N) changes the sign of a number; for example:

Key in 25. Press . Key in N. 25 will become -25. Press  and key in **N** again. The minus sign will be removed and 25 will be positive again.
- * INVERT (I) divides a number into 1; for example:

Key in the number 5. Key in I. The number 0.2 will be displayed. ($1/5 = 0.2$)
- * SELFCHECK DIGIT (S) calculates a self-check digit. When setting up a self-checking number, you may use this command to pre-calculate the check digit.

For example, key in the number 1234. Key in S. 1234 will now be replaced by the digit 4, the self-checking digit. The entire self-checking number is 12344.

More information is contained in the Appendix, "Self-Checking Numbers."
- * PICKUP (P) picks up a number from your form and brings it down to the calculator display area, without requiring that you rekey it.

For example, position the cursor over a number you want to pick up. The entire item must be numeric; e.g., AB-1234 is not allowed. Press P. The number will be placed in the left hand space in the calculator display area.
- * TOTAL (T) provides a column total. If a form contains more than one page of columns, the computed total is for the entire column spanning all the pages. If there are any items in the column that are not all numeric, they will be disregarded when the total is computed.

First position the cursor on any number in a column. Then press T. The column total will appear at the bottom of the screen on the leftmost space.

If all the spaces are full, the total will occupy the left space and the others will move over, with the last number dropping off.

- * ASSIGNMENT (=) puts a number onto the form from the calculator display area; you needn't rekey it.

For example, after performing a calculation, you may move the number in the left space of the display area back onto the form. First position the cursor in the item where you want the number to be placed, then key in =. The number will be moved to that item.

- * QUIT (Q) returns you to the normal screen when you're finished using the calculator. Pressing Escape will do the same.

CHAIN CALCULATIONS

The VersaForm XL calculator makes it especially easy to do multiple calculations. Suppose, for example, that you must calculate:

$$(1 + 2) * (5 - 7)$$

To do this,

1.	Key in 1	(RETURN)	Calc	.....1	.....	.....
2.	Key in 2.		Calc	.....2	.....1	.....
3.	Press +.		Calc	+.....3	.....	.....
4.	Key in 5	(RETURN)	Calc	.....5	.....3	.....
5.	Key in 7	(RETURN)	Calc	.....7	.....5	.....3
6.	Press -.		Calc	-.....-2	.....3	.....
7.	Press *.		Calc	*.....-6	.....	.....

Calculator HELP Command

If you key in ? when the calculator command line is on the screen, you'll see the menu of Calculator Operations (Figure 5-4):

Calculator Operations

Key in any number.

Operations: +, -, *, /. Number on left is divisor or number subtracted.

N changes sign, I divides into 1.
R rounds. S gets self-check digit.

P picks up a number and T picks up a column total. = puts the first number back onto the form.

C moves each number left.
To clear all, repeat C.

? - help; Q - quit; V - Validate

Press return to continue.

Figure 5-4

Figure 5-5 summarizes the steps to follow for calculation.

TO CALCULATE:

1. Get Calculator by using CA command
2. Key in number and press return, or use P to pick up from cursor location.
3. Repeat step 2 for second number.
4. Press the operation key: +, -, *, //, etc.
5. Press = to move answer to your form.

Figure 5-5

Chapter 6

AUTOMATIC CHECKING AND AUTOMATIC FILLING

You set the rules for the accuracy of the data that is entered into the forms you have designed--VersaForm XL enforces them. In addition, you can have the system automatically fill in items, further reducing the margin for error.

Overview

- * When you select FORM DESIGN from the Main Menu, you will see a FORM DESIGN menu with several options, including Checking and Automatic Filling.
- * When your form is displayed on the screen, you will choose the items for which you want to establish checking and filling rules.
- * For each item you choose, a checking and filling menu (Figure 6-1) is displayed, and you select the option(s) you want for that item.

When you enter data on your form and VALIDATE it, VersaForm XL will:

- * Check the entries according to your rules.
- * Perform the automatic filling you have specified, such as looking up prices in a table and computing taxes or making other calculations.

Choosing Checking And Automatic Filling

Checking and filling options may be chosen at the time you design your form, or they may be added or changed at any time, even after you've entered data into the file.

1. Select FORM DESIGN from the Main Menu.
2. From the Form Design menu, select the option "Add or change checking and automatic filling." If required, enter the file name.

Your form design will appear on the screen, and a message at the bottom will instruct you:

Move cursor to item: X-choose checking; D-delete checking; Q-done:

To perform checking and filling for an item:

1. Move the cursor to the item, and press X. The Checking and Automatic Filling menu (Figure 6-1) will be displayed.

```

                CHECKING AND AUTOMATIC FILLING

Minimum-length ..      Maximum-length
Justify (L/R/#) .     Selfchecking (Y)
Numeric --- (Y) .     Date ----- (Y)
Yes-or-no - (Y) .     Mandatory -- (Y)

                EXTENDED CHECKS

Ranges (Y) .           List (Y) .
Format (Y) .



                AUTOMATIC FILLING

Lookup (Y) .           Todaysdate (Y) .
Calc - (Y) .           Column Total (Y)

This item: CUSTOMER

```

Figure 6-1

2. Move the cursor to the option you want to choose. Enter the appropriate character (usually Y, but could be L or R for Justify, or a number).
DO NOT key in anything beside options you are bypassing.
3. Repeat step 2 until you've made all your choices for the item named.
4. (Optional) Use the PRINT () command to get a printed copy of your choices for that item, for reference. Checking and filling choices may also be printed later by using the option, "Print the form definition" from the FORM DESIGN menu.
5. Use the SAVE () command to have your choices filed.

Note: Don't make conflicting choices. For example, TODAYSDATE asks the system to automatically fill in an item, and MANDATORY specifies that you must enter the data manually; therefore, these two options should not both be chosen for the same item.

Checking Options

MINIMUM-LENGTH

Entries must contain at least the minimum number of characters specified.

You might enter 5 for a ZIP code to help avoid errors.

Specify Minimum-Length as 99 to prevent any manual data entries into an item. This gives you a "protected field" that can only be filled automatically.

MAXIMUM-LENGTH

Entries may contain no more than the maximum number of characters specified. The number must be greater than zero.

JUSTIFY

Aligns the data you enter. Justify will move your data to the left or right side of an item on your form, so it will line up in columns on your reports. Justify can also line up the decimal points. Rounding off occurs as needed.

Key in L (left) or R (right), or a digit between 0 and 8 to specify the number of decimal places for your entries. For dollars-and-cents items, key in 2.

* If 2 is keyed in, entries of 3 and 2.996 will both be changed to 3.00 (2 decimal places) and right justified.

NUMERIC

Entries must be numeric. Digits, decimal points, and leading + and - signs are accepted.

Use of this checking feature prevents the entry of non-numeric values into items that should contain a number usable in an arithmetic calculation.

* An incorrectly keyed entry such as 2R5.98 would not be allowed. Neither would a social security number or a phone number (because they're not truly numbers--for instance, you can't add them up.)

YES OR NO

Entries are limited to **Y** or **N** only.

SELF-CHECKING

Important numbers entered on a form, such as account numbers, can be checked for accuracy by the use of an additional calculated check digit, when this option is chosen. The method of calculating the check digit is described in the Appendix, "Self-Checking Numbers."

Entries must be in date format (see About Dates in Chapter 1). The item must contain at least eight spaces.

MANDATORY

The item must be filled in. This prevents inadvertently skipping the item when data is entered.

NOTE: Mandatory means that the user must fill in the item; DO NOT choose Mandatory for an item you want VersaForm XL to fill in automatically.

EXTENDED CHECKS

The Extended Checks--Range, Format, and List--test data for accuracy before it is validated. Choose the Extended Checks in the same way as the others. Then provide the system with additional information by establishing a RANGE of values, a LIST of acceptable entries, or a FORMAT for a specific pattern.

VersaForm XL will ask for the information it needs after you SAVE your choices for each item. For example, if you have chosen the RANGE check, you'll be shown a Range Checking Form after you've made and saved all of your choices for that item. Then you'll be asked to specify the range(s) to check for.

* You may use the normal VersaForm XL commands when entering data on the extended check forms.

RANGE CHECK

This ensures that entries are within specified lower and upper limits. A range may be "open-ended", with only one limit set. For example:

* If entries must be between 5.95 and 50.00, specify a lower limit of 5.95 and an upper limit of 50.00.

* For entries of 50.00 or less, you may set just an upper limit of 50.00. When a low limit is not specified, anything below the upper limit will be accepted.

* If forms are being filed by CUSTOMER, a lower value of A and an upper value of LZ would allow entry of names beginning with A through L. A range of M to ZZ would cover the remaining names.

* Decimals are recognized and put in proper order within a range. Thus, if a range of 25 to 100 is specified, entries of 37.21 and 66.43 are accepted.

How To Establish The Range

A Range Checking form is presented whenever Range is chosen as an option (Figure 6-2).

RANGE CHECKING

On each line type the limits of one range. Input will be OK if it falls in any one range. If you give only the low (high) value, any input higher (lower) will be accepted.

	Low Value	High Value
L#L	H	
01	1-1-84	6-30-84

This item: ORDER DATE

Figure 6-2

When the Range Checking form is displayed:

1. Key in a low limit and/or a high limit.
 - * AT LEAST ONE LIMIT must be specified.
2. VALIDATE (F1). A second line will be displayed, and another range may be entered.
 - * The VALIDATE command checks your entries and provides additional lines for you to fill in.
3. PRINT (F8) (optional); then SAVE (F2).

FORMAT CHECK

Entries must follow certain rules or patterns, such as letters or digits only, or a particular combination. (Do NOT use the Format Check for dollars-and-cents items.)

How To Establish the Format

When you select the Format check, after you complete your other choices for the item, the form shown in Figure 6-3 is displayed. In this example (Figure 6-3), `&&&-###` specifies that the ACCT# must consist of three letters, a hyphen and three digits.

FORMAT CHECKING

The following characters may be used to specify a required format:

& -- Any letter of the alphabet is OK
-- Any digit (0-9) is OK
/ -- Optional leading digit (0-9)
? -- Any character is OK

Any other characters mean that only that particular character will be accepted in that position.

Format `&&&-###`.....

This Item: ACCT#.....

Figure 6-3

- * The use of "/" permits optional leading digits; a format such as `///VF` allows entries of `1VF` to `999VF`.
- * `A.###` allows an entry of `A.495` but not `A.49`.
- * `#&.S` allows you to enter any digit, followed by any letter, followed by a period, followed by the letter `S`; so `4F.S` or `5A.S` would be acceptable.

1. Key in **Y** beside Format on the checking and filling menu.
2. Key in a format for the item when the Format checking form is displayed.
3. SAVE the information.

NOTE: Make sure the format you specify isn't longer than the number of dots for the item on your form will allow.

LIST CHECK

This ensures that all entries into an item appear on a user-prepared list of acceptable values.

When you choose the List Check and then SAVE, you'll be asked to fill in a List Checking form (Figure 6-4).

```

                                LIST CHECKING

Input will be checked against the values
that you enter on the lines below.  Only
input that matches one of the values
below will be accepted.



ACCEPTABLE VALUES

L#   .....V.....
01  Pants
02  Shirts
03  Hose
04  Sweaters
05  Jackets
06  Neckties
07  Blankets
08  Tablecloths

This item: DESCRIPTION.....



```

Figure 6-4

Once the list has been defined, a down arrow (↓) will appear on the form indicating that a pop up pick list is available. During filing, the pick list can be displayed using the   key combination. Items are selected from the list by highlighting an entry using the UP and DOWN arrow keys and then pressing return.

When you enter data in your records, only those entries that match the ones on the list will be accepted.

When the List Checking form is displayed:

1. Key in the first value on Line #1.
 - * Each value may contain up to 20 characters.
2. VALIDATE (); you'll be given a second line to fill in.
 - * Key in up to 300 values.
3. PRINT () (optional). SAVE when you're finished.

NOTE: A list of values must have at least one entry in it, or you will not be able to validate entries on your forms later.

Three VersaForm XL commands, explained in Chapter 5, will be used often when you make or change entries on the List Checking form:

- * If a new line doesn't appear on the List Checking form when you validate the last line, use the PAGE FORWARD (PgDn) command.
- * Use the PAGE BACKWARD (PgUp) command to return to previous pages.
- * Use DELETE (ESC/E/D) to remove data you don't want.

Automatic Filling

Automatic filling options instruct VersaForm XL to fill in items on a form. **MANUAL ENTRY ALWAYS OVERRIDES AUTOMATIC FILLING**, so even if you choose automatic filling, you may later key in data yourself.

LOOKUP

VersaForm XL can look up and automatically fill in information for one item, from data entered into another item, using a table that you have prepared. On the checking and filling menu, specify Lookup for the item you want filled in automatically. VersaForm XL will find this information (the Result value) when you enter information into another item (the Lookup value).

- * **REMEMBER:** Specify Lookup for the item you want filled in automatically, NOT the item that will trigger the lookup.

In Figure 6-5, the DESCRIPTION may be filled in by VersaForm XL from a table which lists the values for STOCK# and DESCRIPTION. Figure 6-6 shows the Lookup Table prepared for DESCRIPTION in which the user has entered stock numbers (Lookup Values) and descriptions (Result Values).

```

                ALPHA TOOLS INC.
                Serving the Bay Area Since 1925

CUSTOMER William Marshall. ACCT# MAR3247.
ADDRESS 321 Central St.... PHONE 622-2384
CITY Columbia..... STATE GA      ZIP 32478
ORDER DATE 6/30/1984.... CLERK George....

L# QTY STOCK#↓ .DESCRIPTION. PRICE AMOUNT.
01 .1. .3204. ....

                                SUBTOTAL .....
                                TAX .....
                                TOTAL .....

```

Figure 6-5

```

                TABLE LOOKUP

The data for this item will be obtained
by looking it up in the table below.
The item to get the lookup value from
is:  Item name STOCK#.....

                Look Up  Result
L#      L      R
01     3204 CLAW HAMMER
02     1394 WRENCH
03     0422 NAILS, 6d
04     0423 NAILS, 8d

This item:  DESCRIPTION.....

```

Figure 6-6

- * DESCRIPTION is the item to be filled in; the lookup option was specified for this item on the checking and filling menu.
- * STOCK# is the item that will provide the Lookup Value.

How to Fill in the Lookup Table

1. Key in the first lookup and result values on Line #1.
2. VALIDATE (F1). A second line will be displayed.
3. When finished, PRINT (F8)(optional). SAVE (F2) your entries.

Some Lookup Table Pointers

- * Up to approximately 300 lookup items may be entered.
- * Each Lookup Value may contain up to 10 characters, each Result up to 25 characters.
- * The Lookup Table may be updated at any time.
- * You may establish more than one Lookup Table on a form.
- * An item may be used more than once as the lookup item.

For example, STOCK# may be used to look up both DESCRIPTION and PRICE.

- * In data entry, if a lookup value is entered incorrectly and has no corresponding result value, VersaForm XL will leave the item blank and continue with the next operation. The List Check can be used to prevent errors when entering lookup values. The use of List Check for STOCK# would ensure that all the stock numbers keyed in on a form are valid.
- * If the lookup table doesn't provide enough items, or they aren't large enough, use a lookup procedure instead. These can look up data on a file that can hold up to 4 million bytes of information, and are discussed in the section of this manual on Procedures.

TODAYSDATE

This tells VersaForm XL to fill in a date on a form, using the current system startup date.

- * Only an item that has no data in it will be filled in. An existing entry will not be changed.
- * The item must contain at least eight spaces.

CALCULATION

VersaForm XL can add, subtract, multiply, divide, find the larger or smaller of two numbers, and carry running totals. Taxes and totals can be computed.

When you choose Calculate from the checking and filling menu, you'll be shown a Calculation form to fill in.

In the example shown in Figure 6-7, VersaForm XL is instructed to calculate the hours per job (HRS PER JOB) by dividing the total hours (TOT HRS) by the

number of jobs (NO JOBS), using the values entered for those items on the form (Figure 6-8):

```

CALCULATION

The calculation may be made by adding,
subtracting, multiplying, or dividing
two items, or one item and a number.

Operations are +,-,*,/,Low (L),High(H)

Operations      Items/numbers
      I1: TOT HRS.
OP1: /I2: NO JOBS.
OP2: .I3: .....
OP3: .I4: .....
OP4: .I5: .....
OP5: .I6: .....

This item: HRS PER JOB.....

```

Figure 6-7

```

NAME Mary Hutchinson..... ID# HUT137
DEPT Service..... BLDG D-1..
MGR Stevens..... EXT 1378..
DATE 8/23/84. HR START 7:30 HR END 3:30
TOT HRS 8.00..... NO JOBS 16.....
HRS PER JOB .50.....

```

Figure 6-8

Up to six items and five operations may be entered on a Calculation form. The operations are:

+	addition	/	division
-	subtraction	L	low (the lower of two numbers)
*	multiplication	H	high (the higher of two numbers)

Operations are performed from top to bottom, with no parentheses or operation priority assumed. In another example (Figure 6-9), VersaForm XL has been asked to calculate the lower or higher of two numbers. In this case, the tax charged is to be at least \$10% of a price but no less than \$2.00. VersaForm XL must calculate the higher of 10% and \$2.00. To do this, VersaForm XL will compute .10 x PRICE, compare that result with \$2.00, and enter the higher of the two numbers as the value for TAX.

CALCULATION	
The calculation may be made by adding, subtracting, multiplying, or dividing two items, or one item and a number.	
Operations are +,-,*,/,Low (L),High(H)	
Operations	Items/numbers
	I1: 0.10...
OP1: *	I2: PRICE..
OP2: H	I3: 2.00...
OP3: .	I4:
OP4: .	I5:
OP5: .	I6:
This item:	TAX.....

Figure 6-9

RUNNING TOTALS

Running totals may be kept for information entered in columns. In Figure 6-10, the BALANCE is the running total of the DEBIT and CREDIT columns, calculated by adding a new amount to the previous value of the balance.

DATE	DESCRIPTION	DEBIT	CREDIT	BALANCE
1-12-83	Rental income	100.00		100.00
1-15-83	Permit fee		15.00	85.00
1-26-83	Royalty payment	40.00		125.00

Figure 6-10

Figure 6-11 shows the information which would be entered on the Calculation Form to calculate the BALANCE in Figure 6-10.

In figure 6-11, I1 is CREDIT, and I2 is DEBIT. I3, BALANCE [-1] tells VersaForm XL to add the latest credit or debit figure to the value of the previous line [-1] in order to obtain the running total.

CALCULATION	
The calculation may be made by adding, subtracting, multiplying, or dividing two items, or one item and a number.	
Operations are +,-,*,/,Low(L),High(H)	
Operations	Items/Numbers
I1:	CREDIT
OP 1: -	I2: DEBIT
OP 2: +	I3: BALANCE [-1]
OP 3: .	I4:
OP 4: .	I5:
OP 5: .	I6:
This item:	BALANCE.....

Figure 6-11

If you have chosen to carry running totals, when you are entering data into your form (filing), you may change or delete only the last line. To correct a previous error an adjusting entry must be made.

Suppose, in Figure 6-10, an error of \$20 was made on the first entry (Rental income). The amount (and balance) should have been \$120.00. Since it is possible to change only the last line, you could add a fourth line that reads:

DATE	DESCRIPTION	DEBIT	CREDIT	BALANCE
1-31-83	(Adjustment)		20.00	145.00

Use Justify for Decimal Places when VersaForm XL performs automatic calculations, as many decimal places are included in the answer as there are spaces available. A number may be rounded if necessary. The Justify option may be used to control the number of decimal places.

For example, if HRS has a value of 3.5 and RATE has a value of 1.25, then AMOUNT will have a calculated value of 4.375. VersaForm XL will round this figure to 4.38 if Justify has been chosen for AMOUNT and specified as "2".

You can ensure that decimals on a report will be aligned when you choose Justify for numerical items during form design.

NOTE: Calculated fields do not include money symbols (\$) or separators (commas between hundreds and thousands).

DEFAULT VALUES

You may choose calculation to have the system enter "default" values. Up to 20 characters of information-- standard words, phrases or numbers--may be selected for automatic filling to fill in any items on your form.

When the Calculation form is displayed, key the value in I1 (the first item on the Calculation form). Do not specify any operation. The value may be numeric or non-numeric, for example, "N/C" (No Charge).

- * An example: use this feature to fill in the name of a clerk who handles most of your orders.
- * Manual entry always overrides defaults when you enter data.

COLUMN TOTAL

You may have a total filled in by choosing Column Total from the checking and filling menu.

When the column total form is displayed, enter the name of the column which is to be totaled. (In Figure 6-12, it is AMOUNT. VersaForm XL will add the AMOUNT values and place the result in the item called SUBTOTAL.)

COLUMN TOTALS

Enter below the name of the column
whose total is to be kept in this
item:

Item name: AMOUNT.....

This item: SUBTOTAL.....

Figure 6-12

- * The item you use to hold the total of a column must be a single item on your form.
- * Since a column total will be a number, you may also want to choose Justify for the item. SUBTOTAL (Figure 6-5) would be justified to two decimal places, since it's a dollars-and-cents item.
- * Numbers will be justified (and rounded, if necessary) to the proper number of decimal places after each operation. Only the justified results of calculations will be shown on the screen. Column totals will be the totals of the justified values in the columns.

Chapter 7

REPORTS

VersaForm XL's Report Function selects data which you have entered into a file and organizes it into reports. You can use the reports you create to analyze and evaluate any information in your files. Reports can be saved and used repeatedly. "Report Variables" may be entered to make changes easily, when the report is run. Summary reports, which print only sub-totaled and totaled data, can be specified. There is no limit to the number of reports you can create and there are few limits to report layout and style.

VersaForm XL produces reports in two phases:

1. You create the report by entering the Report Control Instructions.
2. VersaForm XL follows your instructions and:
 - extracts the data you selected,
 - sorts it into the order you specified, and
 - prints the report.

REPORT CONTROL INSTRUCTIONS

Report Control Instructions are the instructions VersaForm XL follows for producing a report. They are entered on a set of forms, which you fill on the screen. There are three forms:

- * Report Definition Form - identifies which data items to print, and how they will be formatted, sorted, and totaled.
- * Selection Condition Form - sets the conditions that must be met for a data item to be included in your report.
- * Additional Files Form - a list of additional VersaForm XL data files you want included in this report.

Examples showing how to create each of these forms will be followed by detailed information about the items on each.

Creating a Report

Suppose you have a file of invoice forms like the one in Figure 7-1, and you want a simple report showing what you have sold, how many, and to whom, like the report in Figure 7-2.

ALPHA TOOLS, INC.					
SERVING THE BAY AREA SINCE 1925					
CUSTOMER	Carpenter	A	ACCT#	CAR056	
ADDRESS	33 Bridge St		PHONE	234-5678	
CITY	Bigtown		STATE	CA	ZIP 90909
CLERK	Joe		ORDER DATE	11/11/80	
L#	QTY	STOCK#	DESCRIPTION	PRICE	AMOUNT
01	3	A55	Hammer	5.00	15.00
02	2	A45	Chisel	3.00	6.00
03	2	A56	Wrench	10.00	20.00
04	...	.....	.....	.....	.....
			SUB-TOTAL		41.00
			TAX		2.67
			TOTAL		43.67

Figure 7-1

SALES REPORT			
CUSTOMER	QTY	DESCRIPTION	AMOUNT
Smith	3	Wrench	30.00
Smith	5	Chisel	15.00
Smith	3	Hammer	15.00
Jones	4	Chisel	12.00
Jones	5	Hammer	25.00
Brown	5	Chisel	15.00
Brown	2	Hammer	10.00
Green	2	Wrench	20.00
Whyte	3	Chisel	9.00

Figure 7-2. Sales Report

To create this report, you would follow these steps:

1. From the VersaForm Main Menu, select #3, Report. VersaForm will ask for the drive letter, path, and then the name of the file to report from.
2. Enter a name (let's suppose you choose "SALES") for the new report instructions. (The name can be up to six letters).

You will see the Report Menu: (Figure 7-3)

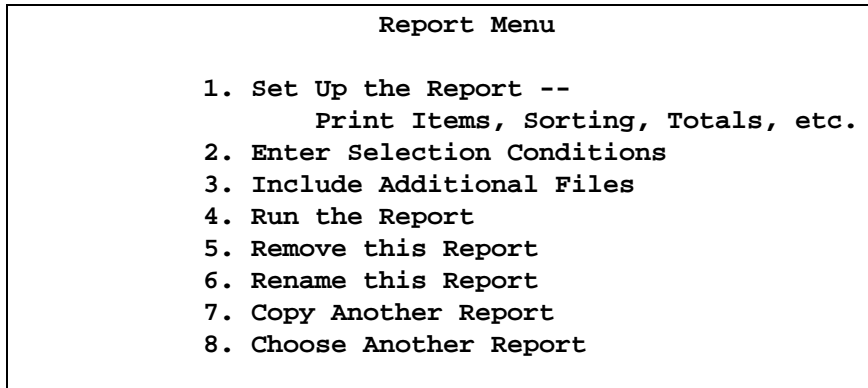
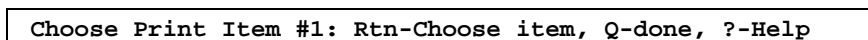



Figure 7-3. Report Menu

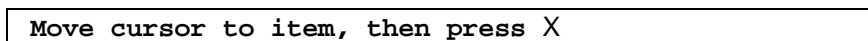
3. From the Report Menu, select # 1, Set Up the Report --

VersaForm XL knows that this is a new report; so the first thing it will do is ask you for the names of the print items. You enter these by simply "pointing" to them. So you can do this, VersaForm will display a blank form from the file you are reporting on.

This message will appear at the bottom of your screen:



Press  to indicate that you wish to choose a Print-item. Watch the bottom of your screen; you will see the message:



Press the tab key (or any other cursor motion keys) to move the cursor to the data field you want printed as the first column on the report--in this case it would be CUSTOMER. Press the key, **X**, to select a print-item. The spaces following your data field name will change to asterisks (*), indicating that you have selected that data item as a print-item.

At the bottom of the screen you will see:

Choose Print Item #2: Rtn-Choose item, Q-done, ?-Help

Notice that the Print item number has increased to 2. Each time you select another Print-item you will see this prompt, and the Print number will have been incremented.

4. Continue choosing Print-items by moving the cursor to the items you want, (in our example, these would be QTY, DESCRIPTION, and AMOUNT) and pressing **X** to indicate your selection.
5. Press the key **Q** (Q-done) after you've chosen the last item to be printed.

VersaForm XL will display the Report Definition form, listing the Print-items you selected, as in Figure 7-4.

```

-----
REPORT DEFINITION
-----
Form Id: SALES1

Title1
Title2
Title3
Page Format:  Width      Length      Left Margin
              Skip      lines after titles      Counts  (Y/N)
===== Print-item Options =====
1-99 +/- Y/N Y/N Y/N
L#  ....Print-items..... Size .....Title..... J S Srt# Dir Sub Ttl Avg
1  CUSTOMER              30 CUSTOMER
2  QTY                    5  QTY
3  DESCRIPTION           33 DESCRIPTION
4  AMOUNT                10 AMOUNT
5
    
```

Figure 7-4 Report Definition

VersaForm XL has filled in several parts of the form--the print items you indicated, and their sizes and default column titles. This is actually all that needs to be done in order to run the report. But there are a number of other choices that we could make that would make it more useful. From this point on, you can enter your choices directly on this form.

One thing we can do is to improve the titles. We could have an overall title on each page of the report by entering it in the Title1 field, and we can separately change the Title and Size of each column. On our report, the DESCRIPTION column is too wide, and a better name for it on this report would be PURCHASES. After changing the Print-item Options (Figure 7-5) the report would appear as in Figure 7-6.

```

-----
                                Screen 1
                                Form Id: SALES1
                                More Options ==>
                                (ctrl1->)
REPORT DEFINITION
-----
Title1 SALES REPORT
Title2
Title3
Page Format:  Width      Length      Left Margin
              Skip      lines after titles      Counts      (Y/N)
===== Print-item Options =====
1-99 +/- Y/N Y/N Y/N
L# .....Print-items..... Size .....Title..... J S Srt# Dir Sub Ttl Avg
1  CUSTOMER                30 CUSTOMER
2  QTY                      5  QTY
3  DESCRIPTION              10 PURCHASES
4  AMOUNT                   10 AMOUNT
5
    
```

Figure 7-5

SALES REPORT			
CUSTOMER	QTY	PURCHASES	AMOUNT
Smith	3	Wrench	30.00
Smith	5	Chisel	15.00
Smith	3	Hammer	15.00
Jones	4	Chisel	12.00
Jones	5	Hammer	25.00
Brown	5	Chisel	15.00
Brown	2	Hammer	10.00
Green	2	Wrench	20.00
Whyte	3	Chisel	9.00

Figure 7-6 Report according to definition in Figure 7-5.

When you validate your entries, VersaForm XL will now tell you how many characters and how many lines (on the report page) you have used.

TOTALING

You could also ask for the total of both the quantity of items sold and the dollar amounts of sales. To do this, enter **Y** in the option "Ttl" for the Print-items QTY and AMOUNT, as in Figure 7-7. VersaForm XL would produce the report shown in Figure 7-8.

```

-----
REPORT DEFINITION
-----
Screen 1
Form Id: SALES1
Title1 SALES REPORT
Title2
Title3
More Options ==>
(ctrl1->)
Page Format:  Width      Length      Left Margin
              Skip      lines after titles      Counts  (Y/N)
===== Print-item Options =====
1-99 +/- Y/N Y/N Y/N
L#  ....Print-items..... Size .....Title..... J S Srt# Dir Sub Ttl Avg
1  CUSTOMER                30 CUSTOMER
2  QTY                      5 QTY
3  DESCRIPTION              10 PURCHASES
4  AMOUNT                   10 AMOUNT
5
    
```

Figure 7-7 Adding totals to the report.

SALES REPORT			
CUSTOMER	QTY	PURCHASES	AMOUNT
Smith	3	Wrench	30.00
Smith	5	Chisel	15.00
Smith	3	Hammer	15.00
Jones	4	Chisel	12.00
Jones	5	Hammer	25.00
Brown	5	Chisel	15.00
Brown	2	Hammer	10.00
Green	2	Wrench	20.00
Whyte	3	Chisel	9.00
	---		-----
Totals:	32		151.00

Figure 7-8 Report with totals.

Avoid adding single-field items from your forms into a total more than once. When you ask VersaForm XL to print both single-item fields and column items from your form, that single-item will appear once for each report column line.

Figure 7-9 shows a total TAX item of 1.50 for all items sold.

If you request a report in which the items to be printed are the STOCK#, QTY, DESCRIPTION and TAX (see Figure 7-10), then TAX, which is a single-field

item, will appear on each line (one line per item sold in Figure 7-9), instead of once per form as it did originally.

ALPHA TOOLS, INC. SERVING THE BAY AREA SINCE 1925					
CUSTOMER STAR, DOUGLAS.. ACCT# STA75791 ADDRESS 7 Mayfield Rd... PHONE CITY Mayfield..... STATE NH ZIP ORDER DATE 8/9/65..... CLERK Abbey...					
L#	QTY	STOCK#	DESCRIPTION	PRICE	AMOUNT.
01	1	A1	Hammer	10.00	10.00
02	1	A2	Wrench	10.00	10.00
03	1	A3	Chisel	10.00	10.00
04	...	.....	.....	.....	.....
SUBTOTAL					30.00
TAX					1.50
TOTAL					31.50

Figure 7-9 Invoice showing Tax single item

STOCK#	QTY	PURCHASES	TAX
A1	1	Hammer	1.95
A2	1	Chisel	1.95
A3	1	Wrench	1.95
	===		====
Totals:	3		5.85

Figure 7-10 Report with repeated Tax field

In this case, the dollar amount calculated for the tax on each line actually represents the total TAX for ALL the items on the form in Figure 7-9. Thus, if you request totals for QTY and TAX, you will be given a correct total for QTY, but an erroneous total for TAX (Figure 7-10).

VersaForm XL will catch this error and print a warning message, but it's better to avoid the problem. DO NOT ask for the total of a single-field item from a form if you are going to have it printed on a report with print-items which are column items.

AVERAGES

You may request the average of each totalled item by entering **Y** in the Average column for that item.

SORTING

You may request that VersaForm XL sort items on a report. Look again at the report in Figure 7-8. The report shows hammers, chisels and wrenches sold, but the items appear in the report in the random order they were found in the file (which happens to have each customer's purchases together). But we'd really like to see the items grouped by item instead of by customer.

To have the products grouped according to their description, you would instruct VersaForm XL to Sort by entering **1** in the column "Srt" and **+** to indicate a low-to-high sort in the column "Dir" (Direction), as in Figure 7-11. (Because VersaForm XL defaults a sort low-to-high, the Direction option could be left blank.)

-----										Screen 1	
REPORT DEFINITION											
-----										Form Id: SALES1	
Title1	SALES REPORT										
Title2										More Options ==>	
Title3										(ctrl->)	
Page Format:	Width	Length	Left Margin								
	Skip	lines after titles			Counts		(Y/N)				
===== Print-item Options =====											
										1-99 +/- Y/N Y/N Y/N	
L#	.....Print-items.....	Size	.....Title.....	J	S	Srt#	Dir	Sub	Ttl	Avg	
1	CUSTOMER	30	CUSTOMER								
2	QTY	5	QTY						Y		
3	DESCRIPTION	10	PURCHASES			1	+				
4	AMOUNT	10	AMOUNT						Y		
5											

Figure 7-11. Report Definition with Sorting by Description

Sorted this way, the chisel sales would be listed first, followed by all the hammers, then the wrenches (Figure 7-12).

SALES REPORT			
CUSTOMER	QTY	PURCHASES	AMOUNT
Smith	5	Chisel	15.00
Whyte	3	Chisel	9.00
Jones	4	Chisel	12.00
Brown	5	Chisel	15.00
Jones	5	Hammer	25.00
Smith	3	Hammer	15.00
Green	2	Wrench	20.00
Smith	3	Wrench	30.00
	===		=====
Totals:	30		141.00

Figure 7-12. Sorted by Description

It's often useful to sort on more than one item. In Figure 7-13, both DESCRIPTION and AMOUNT (within DESCRIPTION) have been sorted.

Items are sorted in the order specified by the number you enter in the option "Srt". In Figure 7-13 DESCRIPTION was sorted first (Srt = 1), then AMOUNT within DESCRIPTION (Srt = 2).

SALES REPORT			
CUSTOMER	QTY	PURCHASES	AMOUNT
Whyte	3	Chisel	9.00
Jones	4	Chisel	12.00
Brown	5	Chisel	15.00
Smith	5	Chisel	15.00
Brown	2	Hammer	10.00
Smith	3	Hammer	15.00
Jones	5	Hammer	25.00
Green	2	Wrench	20.00
Smith	3	Wrench	30.00
	===		=====
Totals:	32		151.00

Figure 7-13 Report sorted by Description, then Amount

Reports may sort on line number.

If you want to sort on a field that you don't want to print, just make the column width zero.

VersaForm XL can print subtotals of the items that are to be totalled, for each group of sorted items. To include subtotals in the report as in Figure 7-14, you'd enter **Y** in the report option "Sub". (Figure 7-15).

Note that you request subtotals based on the item being sorted, not the item that is being totalled. You tell VersaForm XL WHEN to subtotal, not what to subtotal. Thus, in Figure 7-13, if we want subtotals of Amount for each different Purchase type, we would subtotal on Purchases. VersaForm XL knows that Qty and Amount are the columns to be subtotaled, since we have already asked for totaling of those columns.

SALES REPORT			
CUSTOMER	QTY	PURCHASES	AMOUNT
Whyte	3	Chisel	9.00
Jones	4	Chisel	12.00
Brown	5	Chisel	15.00
Smith	5	Chisel	15.00
	--		-----
	17	Chisel	51.00
Brown	2	Hammer	10.00
Smith	3	Hammer	15.00
Jones	5	Hammer	25.00
	--		-----
	10	Hammer	50.00
Green	2	Wrench	20.00
Smith	3	Wrench	30.00
	--		-----
	5	Wrench	50.00
	==		=====
Totals:	32		151.00

Figure 7-14 Report with subtotals

NOTE: It isn't practical to ask for subtotals of items that aren't sorted, since they won't be together in the report.

REPORT DEFINITION		Screen 1	
Title1 SALES REPORT		Form Id: SALES1	
Title2		More Options ==>	
Title3		(ctrl->)	
Page Format:	Width Length Left Margin		
	Skip lines after titles	Counts (Y/N)	
===== Print-item Options =====			
L#	Print-items	Size	Title
1	CUSTOMER	30	CUSTOMER
2	QTY	5	QTY
3	DESCRIPTION	10	PURCHASES
4	AMOUNT	10	AMOUNT
5			

Figure 7-15 Definition of report with subtotals

You may direct VersaForm XL to start a new page after each group of sorted items. Use **P** instead of **Y** in selecting the subtotal item.

You can subtotal even if you haven't asked for totals. Subtotaling in this case is used to set up the report in paragraph format, though no subtotal values are printed (Figure 7-16).

SALES REPORT			
CUSTOMER	QTY	PURCHASES	AMOUNT
Whyte	3	Chisel	9.00
Jones	4	Chisel	12.00
Brown	5	Chisel	15.00
Smith	5	Chisel	15.00
Brown	2	Hammer	10.00
Smith	3	Hammer	15.00
Jones	5	Hammer	25.00
Green	2	Wrench	20.00
Smith	3	Wrench	30.00

Figure 7-16. Report in paragraph format.

Since sorting brings all the items of a kind together, it will often not be necessary to print the item name on each line. If you want to print it only on the first line of each group, use the Suppress option--enter a **Y** in the column headed "S" in Figure 7-15. Figure 7-17 shows the result.

SALES REPORT			
CUSTOMER	QTY	PURCHASES	AMOUNT
Whyte	3	Chisel	9.00
Jones	4		12.00
Brown	5		15.00
Smith	5		15.00
	--		-----
	17	Chisel	51.00
Brown	2	Hammer	10.00
Smith	3		15.00
Jones	5		25.00
	--		-----
	10	Hammer	50.00
Green	2	Wrench	20.00
Smith	3		30.00
	--		-----
	5	Wrench	50.00
	==		=====
Totals:	32		151.00

Figure 7-17. Report with suppression of repeated items.

COUNTS

You may also want to include COUNTS in your report. Counts will perform a tally for each sub-total break. **Y** entered into the "Counts" field will cause counts to be printed below each sub-total group in a detail report, as in Figure 7-18.

For our example Sales Report, we have sub-totaled by DESCRIPTION. A count requested here would provide us with the number of sales, sub-totaled for each value of DESCRIPTION.

SALES REPORT			
CUSTOMER	QTY	PURCHASES	AMOUNT
Whyte	3	Chisel	9.00
Jones	4		12.00
Brown	5		15.00
Smith	5		15.00
--			-----
Count for Chisel:	4		.
Totals:	17	Chisel	51.00
Brown	2	Hammer	10.00
Smith	3		15.00
Jones	5		25.00
--			-----
Count for Hammer:	3		.
Totals:	10	Hammer	50.00
Green	2	Wrench	20.00
Smith	3		30.00
--			-----
Count for Wrench:	2		.
Totals:	5	Wrench	50.00
	==		=====
Count:	9		.
Totals:	32		151.00

Figure 7-18. Detail Report with Counts

If you would like counts included in a summary report, you can have counts printed as a separate column (Figure 7-19). Enter the word **@Count** as an additional Print-item, as in Figure 7-20. When you print summary lines only, VersaForm XL will create an additional column for the counts, which you can title and size just as any other column.

Entering **@Count** has no effect on detail printing, and no effect on the Counts field described above.

SALES REPORT				
CUSTOMER	QTY	PURCHASES	AMOUNT	COUNT
	17	Chisel	51.00	4
	10	Hammer	50.00	3
	5	Wrench	50.00	2
	==		=====	=====
Totals:	32		151.00	9

Figure 7-19. Summary report with Counts in separate column

```

-----
REPORT DEFINITION
-----
Screen 1
Form Id: SALES1
More Options ==>
(ctrl->)

Title1 SALES REPORT
Title2
Title3
Page Format:  Width      Length      Left Margin
              Skip      lines after titles      Counts      (Y/N)
===== Print-item Options =====
1-99 +/- Y/N Y/N Y/N
L#  ....Print-items..... Size .....Title..... J S Srt# Dir Sub Ttl Avg
1  CUSTOMER                30 CUSTOMER
2  QTY                      5 QTY                      Y
3  DESCRIPTION              10 PURCHASES                1 + Y
4  AMOUNT                   10 AMOUNT                    Y
5  @COUNT                  5 COUNT
    
```

Figure 7-20. Definition of summary report with Counts.

PERCENTAGES

Reports can calculate percentages of numerical fields that are totalled. It prints the percentages in a separate column, which may be placed anywhere on the report.

For our example Sales Report, we could calculate percentages for the quantity and amount columns (Figure 7-21).

SALES ANALYSIS				
Customer	Qty	%Qty	Amount	%Amt
Chas Carpenter	22	7.1	434.75	5.5
Chas Joyner	32	10.3	805.50	10.3
Ed Cartwright	52	16.7	1004.50	12.8
Geo Sawyer	24	7.7	605.50	7.7
John Cooper	125	40.1	3748.00	47.7
Mary Mason	19	6.1	480.50	6.1
Will Fletcher	38	12.2	778.15	9.9
	=====	=====	=====	=====
Totals:	312	100.0	7856.90	100.0

Figure 7-21. Summary Report with Percentages

To print percentages, enter the percentage command as a separate Print-item, as in Figure 7-22. The characters @% tell VersaForm that you want to calculate a percent, and they are followed by the name of the field for which you want the percentages calculated. The field you refer to must be numeric, and must be totalled. The Percentage field itself should also be totalled, and should be at least 5 characters wide.

Page Format:		Width	Length	Left Margin	Counts (Y/N)	
		Skip	lines after titles			
===== Print-item Options =====						
L#	.....Print-items.....	Size	.....Title.....	J	S	Srt# Dir Sub Ttl Avg
1	CUSTOMER	30	CUSTOMER			
2	QTY	5	QTY			Y
3	@%QTY	5	%QTY			Y
4	DESCRIPTION	10	PURCHASES	1	+	Y
5	AMOUNT	10	AMOUNT			Y
6	@%AMOUNT	5	%AMT			Y

Figure 7-22. Definition of report with Percentages

REPORT VARIABLES

VersaForm XL has a way of allowing you to enter changes into your report at the time it is run. Sometimes a simple change is necessary to a report. For example, you might wish to change the title of a report to reflect the purpose for which it is being run.. "Trial Balance" at one time and "Audit" at another.

By entering the a word or phrase beginning with **&**, you tell VersaForm XL to ask you for a value which will replace that word or phrase at the time the report is run. Use the **&** character with an expression that represents the information you wish to replace. For example, "&the Title" will cause VersaForm XL to prompt,"Enter the Title:". The exception to this is the variable "&date". VersaForm XL will always replace "&date" with the current date in your computer. To be prompted to enter a date use a phrase like "&Todays date", or "&Beginning date".

Report Variables can also be used to change printer font when a report is run. (Specifying fonts in reports will be discussed in the section, Print Control Sequences -Screen 3).

The Report Definition Form

The Report Definition form has three parts, each on a separate screen: Report Definition, Report Options, and Print Control Sequences. Only the first screen was used in the previous example; use of the other screens will be clear from the explanation below.

All three screens are explained in detail in this section.

```

-----
REPORT DEFINITION
-----
Title1
Title2
Title3
Page Format:  Width      Length      Left Margin
              Skip      lines after titles
Counters (Y/N)
===== Print-item Options =====
1-99 +/- Y/N Y/N Y/N
L# .....Print-items..... Size .....Title..... J S Srt# Dir Sub Ttl Avg
1
*
To choose more print items, use the command Fill (Alt F10)
Enter Print Control Sequences below (ctrl-PgDn)
    
```

Figure 7-23 Report Definition

Report Definition Screen 1 (Figure 7-23)

Title1, Title2, Title3	The title to be printed on your report may be up to three lines. Title lines will be centered on the page. Report Variables can be used to change a title from the keyboard when the report is run.
Page Format Length, Width, Margin, Skip	These fields allow you to set page Length, Width, Left Margin and number of lines to Skip after titles have been printed. Page Width and Left Margin are set in character width increments, e.g., if you are printing at 17 characters-per-inch (compressed mode) and you want a one-inch left margin, you would enter 17 in the Left Margin field. Width must be between 10 and 255 characters; Length between 10 and 100 lines. If you select a page width that is narrower than the width of all the characters and spaces in your report, VersaForm XL will "wrap" the report lines, that is, the characters in excess of the report page width will print on the following line.
Counts	Enter Y to tell VersaForm XL to count the number of data-items included within each group of each sub-totaled print-item. A total count appears at the end of the report with totals and averages (if you have specified them, also).

Print-items and associated options

The columnar section of the Report Definition form tells VersaForm XL *which data items to print* and *how to print them*. The data items you select to print are fields on your form and will be Listed as Print-items. Following each print-item there are nine options which can be changed to control the formatting, sorting and totaling of each print-item in the report.

Option name	Description
Print-Item	The first report option will list the Print-items to be included in your report. The Print-items will appear in columns on your report, automatically arranged in the order in which you selected them. You may insert and delete lines from the print item column using the commands D and I , as in VersaForm XL's filing mode.
Size	The size option allows you to specify the width of the column. You may specify a column width larger or smaller than the actual print-item's width. VersaForm XL will automatically separate columns in a report by at least one space. Keep this in mind when you set the overall

page width of your report. The default column setting is the width of the named print-item.

- Title** You may enter any title you choose as a column heading for each print-item. Remember, however, that your title may only be as long as your column is wide. The default column title is the name of the print-item.
- J** J is for Justify. In the option headed J, you tell VersaForm XL how to print your data within the report column. Enter L for left-flush margin (left justified), R for right-flush margin (right justified), C for centered with equal margins, or a number of digits to indicate decimal places. Numeric data with decimal places will print right justified. If you do not use this option, data will be printed exactly as it appears in your file.
- S** The S option allows you to suppress the printing of data items that have been printed in the previous line of the report. By entering **Y** in this option, you tell VersaForm XL not to print duplicate data items within the same column. Suppression may be used to emphasize sorting, or sub-total breaks within the report. VersaForm's default is not to suppress.
- Srt#** You may sort up to 50 print-items within a report. They may be sorted alphabetically or numerically. By entering a number in the sort column, you select the order in which the print-items on the report will be sorted. If sorting has not been specified VersaForm XL will not sort report lines; they will be printed in the order encountered.
- Dir** If you have entered a number in the "Srt#" column, you can indicate the direction in which the data will be sorted by entering **+** or **-**. If this column is blank, VersaForm XL will automatically sort data items Low-to-High(+). (Low-to-High is A to Z, or 1-10.) You may specify a High-to-Low(-)sort by entering a **-**.
- Sub** You may specify up to ten Subtotal breaks in the report. These are used to organize data in a format that summarizes important parts of the overall report. Use **Y** to specify a subtotal break or **P** to indicate that each subtotal break should begin a new report page. If you entered **Y** for counts, the number of data items in each sub-total will be counted. Summary Reports will print only the print-items for which a Sub-total has been

requested. VersaForm XL does not set default sub-totals.

Note: Use this item to tell VersaForm WHEN to subtotal, not WHAT to subtotal. For instance, if you want to have a subtotal of Cost for each inventory part number, you would enter **Y** in the total (Ttl) column for Cost and enter **Y** in the Subtotal column for part number. Then, each time part number changes, VersaForm will print a subtotal of Cost.

Ttl

Use **Y** to indicate that an item should be totalled. Report totals print at the end of the columns for which a total has been selected. VersaForm XL does not set default totals.

If a non-numeric value is entered for an item you're totaling, it will be valued at zero. For example, if the words "No Charge" appear in an item to be totalled, VersaForm XL will rightly count the entry as zero. An incorrectly typed number, such as 2A4.40 instead of 295.40, is also counted as zero, causing errors. You may avoid this problem through data entry checks chosen in Automatic Checking and Filling for the form design. VersaForm will perform a check to assure entries contain valid numbers in an item that will be totalled later.

You may total up to 50 print items.

Avg

Entering **Y** in the option "Avg" will cause VersaForm XL to calculate an average for numeric data. Averages will print at sub-total breaks and at the end of the column for which an average has been requested.

Counts as a Separate Column

@Count is a special print-item you may use to list counts in a separate column. It is used only in when printing Summary lines only. When printing details, it is ignored. It is unrelated to the counts field described above, which will print counts on a separate line in each sub-total break.

If you wish to have a separate counts column in summary report, include a print-item called @Count. @Count can be inserted anywhere in the list of Print-items and all of its options may be changed or left as defaults, just as any print-item.

Report Definition Options -- Screen 2

To display the Report Options (Figure 7-24), press the keys **CTRL** and **F2** together.

Press **CTRL** and **F1** to return to Screen 1.

If left blank, the default settings are those given by the User and System Setup screens.

```

-----
                                Screen 2
REPORT DEFINITION -- OPTIONS
-----
Control Instructions . (Y/N)          Number of Copies . (#/?)
Pause Between Pages . (Y/N)          Trailer Page . (Y/N)
Detail or Summary . (D/S/B)          Work Disk . (Y/N)
Export . (1-5; 1-VF/Merge 2-Commas 3-Commas,Quotes 4-Fixed width 5-1 per ln)
Print on Printer, Screen, or File . (P/S/F)
Printfile name: Disk:\Path .....    Filename .....
    
```

Figure 7-24. Report Options

- Control Instructions** Enter **Y** to print a record of all the Report Control Instructions, Options and Sequences you have selected for this report.
- Number of Copies** Enter the number of copies of your report to be printed. To instruct VersaForm XL to ask you how many copies to print at the time you run the report, enter **?**.
- Pause between pages** Enter **Y** if you need to pause after each page to insert single sheets of paper in your printer.
- Trailer page** Prints the file name, report date and time, number of form items read and written on a separate page at the end of the report.
- Detail or Summary (D/S/B)** A Summary report prints only sub-totals and totals (and counts and averages, if chosen). VersaForm's default is to ask you just before printing which you want. Enter **D**, **S**, or **B** to avoid being asked; choosing Both will cause both detail and summary versions to be printed,
- Work Disk** In order to produce the report, VersaForm XL needs extra disk space on which to sort the information you have selected, this is the Work Disk. VersaForm XL will use the hard disk as the Report Work Disk. If you have a RAM disk, using it will decrease the report processing time. Unless you have entered a Work file path in your SETUP.VFS file, VersaForm will ask which disk to use when the report is run. To suppress this question enter N.

Export

The Export option will write your report data to a disk file. This makes it possible to produce files which can be used with other MS-DOS programs. Four export file formats are available:

1. VF/Merge: values separated by tabs, each record on a new line. The first line consists of the field names (the symbol » is here used to represent a tab).

```
Name»Address»City»State»Zip
Sam Smith»123 Main Street»Clovis»CA»98906
```

This format must be used in order to create mailing labels to be printed by VersaForm XL. It can also be used together with the mail merge option of some word processors, such as Microsoft Word, which can recognize the field names.

2. Commas: values separated by commas, each record begun on a new line.

```
Sam Smith, 123 Main St., Clovis, CA, 98906
Joe Smith, 456 Elm St., Covina, CA, 91722
```

3. Commas, quotes: same as above, but non-numeric values are enclosed in quotes.

```
"Sam Smith", "123 Main St.", "Clovis", "Ca", 98906
```

4. Fixed width: no field separators.

```
Sam Smith    123 Main St.  Clovis  CA  98906
Joe Smith    456 Elm St.   Covina  Ca  91722
```

5. Each value on a separate line

```
Sam Smith
123 Main St.
Clovis
CA
98906
```

To use this option, enter the number of the desired export format in the field "Export" on the Report Options screen. When the report is to be produced, the system will note your export instructions. You may specify a path and Printfile name for the export data. If you have not specified Printfile name and path in the Report Options, VersaForm XL will ask where you want the output sent.

Disk:\Path

Path for the report file. "&Datapath" and

"&ProgramPath" may be entered, to refer to the current data file path and the VersaForm XL program's path, respectively. (See Chapter 15 for explanation of these).

NOTE: You may want to set up your Report Options in the same way on most of your reports. To avoid having to fill in these options on each report, you can set default values on page 2 of the System Setup (SYSSETUP.VFS) or User Setup (SETUP.VFS).

Options entered in a report override those entered at the user level, which override those entered at the system level. For more about user- and system- level Report Control Options, see Chapter 11.

Print Control Sequences - Screen 3

```





                                Screen 3
REPORT DEFINITION -- PRINT CONTROL SEQUENCES

Use ASCII codes separated by \, as 27\34\139

Titles_on
Titles_off
  Body_on
  Body_off
Totals_on
Totals_off
Trailer_on
Trailer_off

Use_default  (Y/N/? -- to use default print control seq)
    
```

Figure 7-25. Print Control Sequences -- Screen 3

To display the Print Control Sequences (Figure 7-25), press the keys  and  together. Press   to return to Screen 1.

Sequences of ASCII codes which control the printer are called Print Control Sequences. Most printers can change fonts, print bold, italics or underscore if given the proper sequence. Print control sequences for your printer must be found in your printer manual.

Enter the ASCII code sequences to turn on and off the printer functions you want to use in these fields. Each is a sequence of numbers or letters, almost always beginning with ESCAPE (ASCII code 27) or another number. Enter a sequence of numbers by placing a backslash between numbers.

For example, the print control sequence to change an Epson dot-matrix printer to compressed mode is ESC (27) followed by 15, which is entered as \27\15.

If the sequence is given as letters (or if part of it is), just enter the letters.

For example, to change an HP LaserJet to compressed mode, one possible control sequence the number of characters per inch, which is 16.66. The entire sequence is `\27(s16.66H`. Another sequence to set compressed mode on an HP LaserJet is `\27&k2S`.

In these sequences, "27" is the only ASCII code; the rest of the characters represent themselves. If you need to enter a numeric character following an ASCII code, use a quote mark (") to set them apart. Thus `\15"2` denotes the ASCII code 15 followed by the character 2, while `\152` denotes the ascii code 152.

You can use different styles for the titles, the report body, the totals, and the trailers. If you want only one style for the entire report, enter it in the `Body_on` field and enter the sequence for turning that style off in the `Trailer_off` field. Report Variables can be used to prompt the user for a Print Control Sequence when the report is run.

You may instruct VersaForm XL to automatically use a default Print Control Sequence entered in the `File SETUP.VFS` or `SYSSETUP.VFS` by entering **Y** in the field "Use-default". If you do not mark this field **N** and a Print Control Sequence is entered into one or both of these files, VersaForm will ask if the Print Control Sequence should be sent.

NOTE: if you do not turn off a print control at the end of your report, the printer will remain in the mode of the last sequence it received.

Selection Conditions

Often you want a report that focuses only on a particular subset of the data in a file--perhaps you only want to see the invoices for this month, or the sales of only one type of merchandise. VersaForm XL lets you select just which data you'd like included (or excluded) in your report. You do this by entering Selection Conditions.

Suppose you wanted a report like the one in Figure 7-17, but which only included sales of hammers. Follow these steps:

1. Select #2, from the Report Menu, "Enter Selection Conditions". A blank form from your file will be displayed. VersaForm will prompt:


Selection Condition #1 Test #1; Choose item to test: Rtn-Choose/?-Help/Q-done

Each test consists of three parts:

- The item to be tested (e.g., PRICE)

- The comparison type (e.g., EQ)
- The item to compare to: either another item on the form (E.G.,AMOUNT) or a value that you enter (e.g., 15.00)

In this case you'd want to set up a test that would require the DESCRIPTION field to be EQUAL to HAMMER.


1. Press  until the cursor moves to the item to be tested (in this case, DESCRIPTION). Then press X.

Now you'll be asked to specify the comparison type:

Enter Comparison Type - EQ,NE,GT,GE,LT,LE,CO,EX,?:

Eight different comparison types can be used:


Equal (EQ)	Less Than or Equal to (LE)
Not Equal (NE)	Greater Than or Equal to (GE)
Greater Than (GT)	Contains (CO)
Less Than (LT)	Excludes (EX)

2. Key in the letters of the comparison type you want to use, then press .


You'll be asked for the item to compare to:

Compare to: Rtn-Another Item on the form, V-Value, ?-Help

If you want to test against an another ITEM from the form:

3. Press . VersaForm XL will display the form. Move the cursor to the item you wish to compare against. Press X to indicate your choice.

Or, If you want to enter a VALUE to compare against (In this case, HAMMER):

4. Enter **V**. VersaForm XL will ask you for the value. Enter the value to compare against and press .

* You may use a report variable (a word beginning with &) to defer entering a value until the report is actually produced. In this case, VersaForm will ask you to enter the value when the report is run.

* The special variable "&DATE" will automatically be replaced by the current date.

5. When you've finished entering Test #1, VersaForm XL will ask if you want to specify another test. If so, reply **Y**.

The rule is, **all** comparisons specified on a single Selection condition form must be satisfied in order for the data to be included in the report.

If you do not want to specify another test:

Key in **N**. The Selection Condition Form will appear on the screen (Figure 7-26).

REPORT DEFINITION			
SELECTION CONDITION FORM ID: SALES1			
			Is "Test_Against" an Item Name or a Value?
Tests for this Selection Condition			
L#	.....Item_Tested.....	Test	.....Test_Against..... N/V
1	DESCRIPTION	EQ HAMMER	V

Figure 7-26 Selection Condition

- Examine the form. If it's okay, SAVE it (F2). If you wish, you may make changes by entering information directly into the Selection Condition Form, or by using the special command FILL (ALT F10).

When you use FILL, VersaForm XL will asks for more selection tests. Alternatively, you may enter them directly on the Selection Condition form.

A selection condition form can contain up to 99 tests. ALL the tests in a selection condition form must be satisfied for a data item to be chosen. For example:

Select If
 STATE EQ KS (1st Test)
 (And)
 CITY EQ KANSAS CITY (2nd Test)

Data will be selected only if BOTH tests of this condition are met (Figure 7-27).

Data from this form WILL be selected.	Data from this form WILL NOT be selected.
CUSTOMER John Doe.....	CUSTOMER John Doe.....
ADDRESS 123 J St.....	ADDRESS 123 J St.....
CITY KANSAS CITY.....	CITY ST KANSAS CITY.....
STATE KS ZIP 66109-1234	STATE MO ZIP 63106-1234

Figure 7-27 Data selected only if both tests met.

A common mistake is to enter two conflicting selection tests in the same condition form. For example:

```
Select If
  STATE EQ KS (1st Test)
  (And)
  STATE EQ TX (2nd Test)
```

Nothing at all would be selected, because no one lives in both states.

The writer of this condition probably meant to include everyone who lives either in Kansas OR in Texas. To do this you need to use two selection conditions.

Multiple Selection Conditions

If you want to select data that meets ANY of several tests, rather than ALL of the tests, you must put each test on a separate Selection Condition form. You may specify up to nine selection conditions by filling in up to nine separate Selection Condition forms. For example, you may specify:

Condition 1: Select If STATE EQ TX
(Or)

Condition 2: Select If STATE EQ CA

Data will be selected if it meets EITHER condition (Figure 7-28):

<p>Data from this form WILL be selected.</p>	<p>Data from this form WILL be selected.</p>
<p>CUSTOMER John Doe..... ADDRESS 123 J St..... CITY Dallas..... STATE TX ZIP 72301-1234</p>	<p>CUSTOMER John Doe..... ADDRESS 123 J St..... CITY Anaheim..... STATE CA ZIP 90031-1234</p>
<p>Data from this form WILL NOT be selected.</p>	<p>Data from this form WILL NOT be selected.</p>
<p>CUSTOMER John Doe..... ADDRESS 123 J St..... CITY Houston..... STATE MI ZIP 15241-3421</p>	<p>CUSTOMER John Doe..... ADDRESS 123 J St..... CITY Santa Cruz..... STATE FL ZIP 90031-5678</p>

Figure 7-28 Data selected if either condition is met.

When more than one selection condition is specified, each can consist of one or more tests. For example:

```
Condition 1:  Select If STATE EQ TX
              (and)
              CITY EQ DALLAS
Condition 2:  Select if STATE EQ CA
```

For a form to satisfy Condition 1, STATE must be filled in with TX, and CITY must be filled in with DALLAS.

To satisfy Condition 2, STATE must be filled in with CA.

When two conditions are specified, VersaForm XL will extract data IF EITHER CONDITION IS MET COMPLETELY.

VARIABLES IN SELECTION CONDITIONS

When you precede a selection test value with **&** on the Selection Condition form, you'll be asked to specify the value WHEN THE REPORT IS RUN. This allows you to change a selection condition to meet different requirements.

For example:

```
STATE Equals &THE STATE
```

can become

```
STATE Equals TX
```

on one day, and

```
STATE Equals NY
```

on another.

You would be asked each time to enter THE STATE.

NOTE:


- * You may fill in up to nine separate Selection Conditions.
- * If no selection condition is specified, the items you've chosen to print will be extracted from ALL the forms in your file.
- * Items included in selection conditions need not be print-items. They can be any item on your form.
- * Comparisons are not case-sensitive. In other words, values will be compared as if all letters were capitals, both in the form and in the test, regardless of whether the data was entered in caps or small letters.

Eight comparison tests may be used:

Equal (EQ)	The two items must be the same.
Not Equal (NE)	The two items must not be equal.
Greater Than (GT)	The first item is greater than the second. Greater means a later date, or higher in the alphabet. When numbers, dates, and words are compared with each other, numbers are considered the smallest, followed by dates, then words and phrases.
Less Than (LT)	The first item is less than the second.
Less Than Or Equal To (LE)	The first item is not greater than the second.
Greater Than Or Equal To (GE)	The first item is not less than the second.
Contains (CO)	The second item appears in the first item; e.g., EVE appears in EVENING.
Excludes (EX)	The second item does not appear in the first; e.g., ADJ is not contained in the data field PAYCODE.

Combining Files in a Report

Sometimes several files need to be combined into a single report. As long as all of the files have the same form design, this can be done.

1. Choose Option 3 on the Report Menu, Include Additional Files.
2. Enter each of the paths and filenames as they are requested.
3. Press Escape when you are done. You will see the form in Figure 7-29.
4. Check the filenames and make corrections if necessary.
5. SAVE () the form.

Instead of entering a filename, you may simply enter a ? in the Additional Files form. This tells VersaForm XL to ask you to designate the additional files at the time the report is run.

```

-----
                                Screen 1
          REPORT DEFINITION
          ADDITIONAL FILES FOR THIS REPORT
          -----
                                FORM ID: SALEST1

L# .....PATH\FILENAME.....
1  filename1
2  filename1
3

```

Figure 7-29. Additional files.

After the Instructions are Entered

Choose option 4, Run the report from the Report Menu. VersaForm XL will read the Report Control Instructions and check them for accuracy. In addition, if you've used any report variables, you'll be asked to supply their values.

- * VersaForm XL will ask if you want the Report Control Instructions printed. If you do, turn on the printer and key in Y. It's useful to have a printed copy as a record of the information requested in the report.

VersaForm XL reads through the file and displays the number of forms scanned and the number of records selected, so you can watch the selection process as it happens.

If you've requested sorting, the process may be only partly finished when VersaForm XL finishes reading your file. The remainder of the work (called merging) will be done automatically.

VersaForm XL is then ready to print the results. For example, if 120 records were selected, and you've requested totals, you'll be asked:

```

120 records in this report.
Print all the detail lines, or summaries only? (D/S)

```

If there are many records, you may decide to print only the summary lines - that is, the totals and subtotals.

Press D () to print the entire report; or press S () to print just the totals and subtotals.

A report may be printed, displayed on your screen, or sent to a disk file. You'll be asked:

```

Output directly to Printer? (Y/N)

```


If the report is to be printed:

1. Turn on the printer; then key in Y.

VersaForm XL will ask:


Pause between pages? (Y/N)

This allows you to hand feed each sheet of paper into the printer.

2. Key in **Y** if you want to use separate sheets of paper, such as letterhead stationery, and press .

OR

Check to see that the continuous feed paper is correctly adjusted; then key in **N**, and printing will begin.

NOTE: You can temporarily halt printing by pressing any key on your keyboard; press  to continue.

If you want the report displayed on your screen:

- * When asked if you want the output (report) sent directly to your printer, key in **N**; when asked if it's to be sent to your screen, Key in **Y**.

If you want the report sent to a disk file:

- * When asked if you want the output sent directly to your printer and to your screen, key in **N**; when asked if you want it sent to a disk file, key in **Y**.

Follow instructions given for locating and naming the file to send the report output TO.

After the report is either printed, displayed, or sent to a disk file, and depending on your Report Options, VersaForm XL asks:

Print the report again? (Y/N)

This enables you to look at the report on the screen first, and then have it printed, or to print the summaries first and then the details, or to obtain multiple copies.

All of these options which govern how the report is printed can be pre-set on the Report Options screen. By pre-setting the options, you can arrange for printing of the report to begin with no questions at all. Thus you need not be present when printing occurs.

REMOVE A REPORT

When you are finished with a set of instructions, you may remove them from your file. Select option #5, Remove This Report.

Chapter 8

PRINT ON PREPRINTED FORMS

This chapter tells how to set up printing on preprinted forms, and how to do the printing.


- * Print information from your files on standard forms, or on forms you have created.
- * Tell the system what to print and where to print it. These instructions are called a "print format".
- * Include messages, comments, or other text; change them at each printing to suit the occasion.
- * Direct information to a file for electronic data interchange instead of to a paper form.
- * Save print formats for repeated use.

Create A Print Format

1. Select DESIGN A PRINT FORMAT from the Main Menu.
2. Enter the path and file name, if required.

VersaForm XL will ask:

Enter a new print format name or "?" to select an old one. >> ?

3. Press  to see a list of existing formats. If you are defining a new print format, enter a name (up to 35 characters) for the new print format. The print format menu (Figure 8-1) will appear.

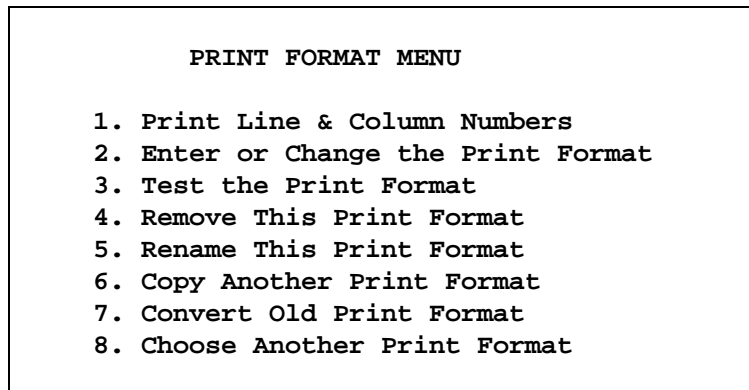



Figure 8-1, Print Format Menu.

NOTE: In the descriptions of these options, we refer to "preprinted forms," but the discussion applies to printing on blank paper as well.

PRINT LINE AND COLUMN NUMBERS


The printing position of an item will usually be different from its position on the screen. In order to tell VersaForm XL exactly where to print each item on the form, you'll need to give the line and column number for each item.

1. Insert a form (or letterhead, etc.) in the printer. If your printer has more than one character size, make sure it is set correctly. Line up the form so the printer will print at the top. Choose some mark on the printer and some line or mark on the form so you'll be able to insert each form in the printer exactly the same way.
2. Choose number 1 from the menu and press . You'll see:

How many lines are there, top edge to bottom?

3. Enter the number of lines that can be printed on the form. For example, if your printer prints 6 lines per inch (most do) and the form is 11 inches from top to bottom, enter 66. The number need not be exact at this point, as this is only a test to see where things come out on the paper, and you can do it over. You'll be asked:

How many print positions are there across the page?

4. Enter the approximate number. Most printers print either 10, 12 or 15 characters per inch. Try 80 or 85 characters across for standard 8.5 x 11 inch paper. Press . VersaForm XL will ask you to make sure the

paper is set correctly and then press . The grid will print directly on

01	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	
02	234567890123456789012345678901234567890123456789012345678901234567890	INVOICE						34568890	
03	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	
04	2345678901234	ALPHA TOOLS, INC	345678901234567890123456	Invoice Number	_____				
05	1	1479 Alexander Street	4	5	Invoice Date	_____			
06	2345678901234	Campbell, CA 95008	5678901234567890123456	Account Number	_____				
S	1	2	3	S	5	6	7	8	
O	23456789012345678901234567890123456789	H			234567890123456789012345678901234567890				
L	1	2	3	I	5	6	7	8	
D	23456789012345678901234567890123456789	P			234567890123456789012345678901234567890				
T	1	2	3	T	5	6	7	8	
O	23456789012345678901234567890123456789	C			234567890123456789012345678901234567890				
13	1	2	3	4	4	6	7	8	
14	234567890123456789012345678901234567890123456789012345678901234567890								

In this example, information for Invoice Number will print on Line 4, column 73.

Figure 8-2

The grid in Figure 8-2 is printed on a form that is 85 columns wide and 36 lines long.

When you look at a spot on the form with the grid overprinted, you can tell what its line and column numbers are, relative to your printer, by noting the digits printed on that space.

Make sure the printed area is wide enough to cover all the items on your form. Also check to see that the correct number of lines were printed. If you are using continuous forms, the paper should have advanced to exactly the same place on the next form as it began on the first one. If either the width or the length of the printed area is incorrect, try again.

When you are finished, keep your overprinted form. You'll use it to design your print format.

The print format menu (Figure 8-1) will again be displayed.

ENTER A PRINT FORMAT

VersaForm XL needs to know:

- * The number of lines on each page.
- * The number of column items to print on each form.
- * The line on which the columns begin.

- * The line and column where each single item will start.

From the Print Format menu:

1. Choose option 2 (Enter or Change the Print Format) from the menu. VersaForm will ask,


```
Is this a Paper or an electronic format? (P/E): P
```

Answer P to create a paper format.

VersaForm XL knows that this is a new format; so the first thing it will do is ask you for the names of the print items. You enter these by simply "pointing" to them. So you can do this, VersaForm will display a blank form from the file you are reporting on.

This message will appear at the bottom of your screen:

```
Choose Print Item #1: Rtn-Choose item, Q-done, ?-Help
```

2. Press  to indicate that you wish to pick a Print-item. Watch the bottom of your screen; you will see the message:

```
Move cursor to item, then press X
```

Press the tab key (or any other cursor motion keys) to move the cursor to the data field you want to select--suppose it's CUSTOMER. Press **X** to select a Print-item. The spaces following your data field name will change to asterisks (*), indicating that you have selected that field.

There is no need to select items in any particular order; you can print any item anywhere. VersaForm will ask,

```
Enter the line number you want Customer (30
characters) to print on:
```

Enter the line number where you want this item to print. VersaForm will ask:

```
Enter the column number you want Customer (30
characters) to print on:
```

Enter the column number where you want this item to print. At the bottom of the screen you will see:

Choose Print Item #2: Rtn-Choose item, Q-done, ?-Help

Notice that the item number has increased to 2. Each time you select another item the Print number will be incremented.

- 3. Continue choosing Print-items by moving the cursor to the items you want, pressing **X** to indicate your selection.
- 4. Enter **Q** (quit-done) after you've chosen the last item to be printed.

VersaForm XL will display the Print Format form, listing the Print-items you selected, as in Figure 8-3.

- 5. Complete the Print Format as follows:

- * Enter the length and width of the form in the respective fields.
- * If you want to print any columnar information:

Enter the line where the columns should start in Details Start At.

Enter the number of details to print on each preprinted form, in Number of Details. At the time of printing, VersaForm XL will print multiple pages if needed, to accommodate all the column lines included from the original form.

If each column line will occupy more than one line on the paper form, enter the number of lines in Lines per Detail.

- 6. For a simple print format, this is all you need to do. You may, however, make any changes in the print format in the usual way. Press **F2** to SAVE.

```

                                Print Format Definition                                Screen 1

Form ID: Invoice                                     Type P      More Options ==>
                                                    (ctrl-right)

Length of Form 66  Details Start At 22
Width of Form 80  Number of Details 10  Lines per Detail 1
    Top Margin ...      Left Margin ...
Pause Between Pages . (Y/N/?)  Ask For Form Change . (Y/N)

=====
L#  Pg Line Col. Sz J .....Print-Items.....  S E
1  ..  ....  ....  .  .....

Enter Font, Overlay & Escape Sequence Information Below (Ctrl-PgDn)

```

Figure 8-3. Print Format

There are a number of options that you can choose by filling in other fields in the print format. An explanation of all the fields in the print format follows.

THE PRINT FORMAT

Length of Form	Number of lines on the page to be printed. Mandatory.
Details Start At	Line number on the page where the first detail line (column line) is to be printed. Mandatory if there are columns on this print format.
Width of Form	Number of spaces/characters across on the form to be printed. Mandatory.
Number of Details	Maximum number of detail lines to be printed on each page. Mandatory if there are columns on this print format.
Lines per Detail	Number of lines on the printed page to be given to each detail line on the data record. Mandatory if there are columns on this print format.
Top Margin	Number to be added to each line number on the print format. If top margin is 3 then a field specified to print on line 4 will actually print on line 7. Shifts the whole print format up or down. Default is 0.
Left Margin	Number to be added to each column number on the print format. If left margin is 3 then a field specified to print at col. 4 will actually print at col. 7. Shifts the whole print format left or right. Default is 0.
Pause Between Pages	Y(es) will always pause between pages, N(o) won't. A question mark will cause the system to ask which you want to do. Default is No.
Ask for Form Change	Y(es) will ask for a form change on the first form printed with this format. Default is No.

COLUMNAR ITEMS

These describe the items to be printed, which can be data items, text, or computed values. Fill in one line for each.

Pg	Page that this item should be printed on.
A	All pages
F	First page only
L	Last page only
NF	All but first page
NL	All but last page

	N	No printing at all
Line		Line number to print on. Leave this column blank when the item you are printing is a detail (columnar item) on your form, since details are printed on several lines of the printed form. Exception: if each detail line of the original takes up more than one line on the printed form, you need to tell which of those lines to print this item on. In this case, enter D1-D9 to indicate line 1-9 of the detail.
Col		Column number for this item to start printing at. Mandatory.
Sz		Number of characters or spaces for this item. Values must be between 1 and 80. Default is field or string length. Mandatory for other expressions.
J		Justification L Left justify (in size) R Right justify (in size) C Center (within size) Z Right justify and zero fill on the left.
Print-items		The expression to be printed. It can be a field name, a word or phrase in quotes, or any expression that would be legal if used to denote a value in a procedure. Examples: Customer "Merry Christmas" (no semicolon) Coltotal (Amount) (no semicolon)
S		The number (1-9) of the starting printer control sequence for this print item. The actual sequences are on Page 3 of the print format.
E		The number (1-9) of the ending printer control sequence for this print item. The actual sequences are on Page 3 of the print format.

PAGE 2 ITEMS

Secondary File	This field is currently not used.
Key-From1	This field is currently not used.
Key-From2	This field is currently not used.

Initial Procedure	The name of a VersaForm procedure to execute before the print format is written.
Detail Procedure	The name of a VersaForm procedure to execute before each detail line in the print format is written.
Ending Procedure	The name of a VersaForm procedure to execute after the print format is written.
Format	Contains a code or series of codes that control the format of the data to be printed
	0-9 Specifies the number of decimal places for a number
	# Removes all characters not between 0 and 9
	A Removes all characters not between A and Z
	C Capitalizes the first letter of each word in the string.
	D Converts a date into "long form", spelling the month
	K Converts date as full 10-character date
	L Converts to lower case
	N Removes all characters except 0 to 9, +, -, and .
	U Converts to upper case
	V Removes all characters except A to Z and 0 to 9
	W Blanks all characters except A to Z or 0 to 9
	Y Format a date as YYYYMMDD

PAGE 3 ITEMS.

Overlay Files	Enter Y in order to have fonts and overlay files (if any) downloaded before the first form of this format is printed, or when print format setup is requested.
Download File	Name of up to 3 files of fonts and overlays (if any) to be downloaded before the first form of this format is printed, or when print format setup is requested.
Reset Esc Seq	The printer control sequence sent before the first form of this format is printed. It precedes downloading as well.
Initial Esc Seq	The printer control sequence sent before each form of this format is printed.
Ending Esc Seq	The printer control sequence sent after each form of this format is printed.
Esc Sequence #	These printer control sequences are sent when their number (1 through 9) is indicated in the S or E columns above.

Use Default If Y, the default printer control sequence (from the Setup file) is sent before anything else.

OPERATOR-ENTERED VALUES

You can have the operator enter values that you need in a print format but which you don't know until run time. To do this, enter V@GETARG (0, message) in the Print_item field. At the time of printing, VersaForm XL will then ask you to supply a value, and it will use whatever the message is to ask. For example, if you entered V@GETARG (0, 'Enter the warning message'), then VersaForm XL would ask the operator, "Enter the warning message", and if the operator entered "Second Notice" or "Final Notice", that is what would be printed.

SYSTEM-GENERATED VALUES

The function VDATE gives the current date. Wherever VDATE is used in a print format, the current date will be printed.

The function V@PAGE gives the current page number of a multi-page form. The function V@PAGES gives the number of pages in the form. This enables you to print phrases like "page 2 of 3" in a print format.

The function V@LINE gives the current detail line number. The function V@LINES gives the number of details (column lines) in the form.

GLOBAL VARIABLES

Print formats can recognize global variables--the same variables that procedures do. This provides a means of setting print format data, which may have been obtained from a data file or other source. To provide a way to set such variables when forms are printed in batch mode, any procedure named *STARTPRINT will be automatically run at the beginning of batch printing (#5 on the Main Menu.) Variables declared in such a procedure will be global.

To use this feature, use your global variable as a print item in the print format.

OTHER OPTIONS ON THE PRINT FORMAT MENU

- * Test. VersaForm XL will print one form with asterisks (*) instead of data, so you can make sure everything appears in the right place.
- * Remove. The program will remove the print format from the file.
- * Rename. You may rename a print format.

- * Copy. You may copy another print format (from the same file) to this one. Then, of course, you can follow the instructions above to make changes to it.
- * Convert old print format. If you are upgrading from version 5.xx to the current version, use this option to convert the print formats.

Electronic Print Formats

You can also use print formats to help prepare files for electronic transmission of data.

NOTE: The print format controls the order in which data within a form is placed on a file. To open the file, write headers and trailers, and control which forms are written, you must use a VersaForm XL procedure. Writing procedures is explained in Part III of this manual.

When you answer E to the question,

Is this a Paper or an electronic format? (P/E): P

VersaForm XL proceeds as before, but uses a different print format form (Figure 8-4). The fields on this form are explained below:

File Format Definition		Screen 1
Form ID: Electronic--.....	Type E	More Options ==> (ctrl-right)
Length of Record	Length of Detail	
Details Start At	Number of Details ...	
Offset		
=====		
L#	R D Pos. Sz J	Print-Items..... Format
1	. . . . .	.....
2	. . . . .	.....
3	. . . . .	.....
4	. . . . .	.....
5	. . . . .	.....
6	. . . . .	.....
7	. . . . .	.....
8	. . . . .	.....
Redefinition Conditions (ctrl-pagedown)		

Figure 8-4. Electronic Print Format

ELECTRONIC PRINT FORMAT FIELDS

Length of Record	Length of output record in bytes. The record will be padded with spaces or truncated to this length.
Length of Detail	Length of output detail in bytes. The detail will be padded with spaces or truncated to this length.
Details Start At	Offset in the output record where the first detail line (column line) is to be written. Mandatory if there are columns on this print format.
Number of Details	Maximum number of detail lines to be written to each output record. Mandatory if there are columns on this print format.
Offset	Number of bytes to offset each output data record within the given output record length. Results in the specified number of blank bytes at the beginning of the output.

COLUMNAR ITEMS

R	Blank or 1-9. Used only if Redefine area on Screen 3 is TRUE for that line number.
D	Y or N. Y if this is a detail item.
Pos	Position in the record where the field begins.
Sz	Number of characters or spaces for this item. Values must be between 1 and 80. Default is field or string length. Mandatory for other expressions.
J	Justification. See the justification codes for paper print formats, above.
Print-items	The expression to be printed. It can be a field name, a word or phrase in quotes, or any expression that would be legal if used to denote a value in a procedure. Examples: Customer "Merry Christmas" (no semicolon) Coltotal (Amount) (no semicolon)
Format	See the format codes for paper print formats, above.

PAGE 2 ITEMS

Secondary File	This field is currently not used.
Key-From1	This field is currently not used.
Key-From2	This field is currently not used.
Initial Procedure	The name of a VersaForm procedure to execute before the print format is written.
Detail Procedure	The name of a VersaForm procedure to execute before each detail line in the print format is written.
Ending Procedure	The name of a VersaForm procedure to execute after the print format is written.

PAGE 3 ITEMS

Redefine N	<p>Redefinition condition number N. Controls whether any line with N in the R column will be output. Output will take place only if this condition is true.</p> <p>Write the condition as you would an IF condition in a procedure. For instance, if a Print-item refers to redefinition condition 3, and redefinition condition 3 is "State = NY", then that item will be printed only if the form item State is indeed NY.</p>
-------------------	---

Print The Forms

To print forms using a format you have designed, you may use the PRINT command when you are keying data into a form (See Chapter 5). But if you have many forms to print, you may also use the VersaForm XL Copy/Print function.

Select the Forms to Print

The Copy/Print function provides three ways to specify which forms to print:

1. **SELECT ALL FORMS**- VersaForm XL will print all the forms in the file.
2. **MANUAL SELECTION** - You may select the forms to be printed one by one; answer Y(es) or N(o) as VersaForm XL identifies each form in the file.
3. **AUTOMATIC SELECTION** - You may set up selection conditions. This is the same process used for generating reports (Chapter 7, "Reports"). The

same "variable" option applies, allowing you to defer the choice of selection conditions.

NOTE: Since entire forms are selected for copying or printing, only single items may be used in the selection conditions, not column (multiple) items. For example, you may ask to have the form in Figure 8-5 selected for printing if "ZIP EQ 04938," but you may NOT ask to have it selected if "QTY EQ 3."

ALPHA TOOLS, INC.					
SERVING THE BAY AREA SINCE 1925					
CUSTOMER Seymour Brothers... ACCT3 SEY-8807					
ADDRESS 9201 West Hazel..... PHONE 803-4752					
CITY Hammond..... STATE In ZIP 04938					
ORDER DATE 6/12/82.. CLERK Andy.....					
L#	QTY	STOCK#↓	DESCRIPTION	PRICE	AMOUNT.
1	7..	321...	Pliers.....	10.95	76.65
2	3..	340A..	Shovels.....	15.00	45.00
3	...	.....	.....	.....	.....
				SUBTOTAL	..121.65
				TAX	....7.91
				TOTAL	..129.56

Figure 8-5

SPECIFY YOUR SELECTION CHOICE

Select Copy or Print Forms from the Main Menu. Choose the option to print.

From the form selection menu, choose Automatic Selection. From this point, the routine is the same as in the REPORT function, described in Chapter 7. You will tell VersaForm XL:

- * if you want to use an existing set of instructions, as is or modified; or
- * if you want to name and design a new set of instructions.

The only control instructions needed by the printing process are the selection conditions. When you choose automatic selection of forms for copying or printing, you will be asked to fill in the same selection condition form required for a report if the Control Instructions are new.

If you have entered or changed any selection conditions, VersaForm XL will ask:

```
Control Instructions Entered.  
Do you want to run the copy/print now? Y
```

1. Enter **Y** if you want to continue. If you chose automatic selection, the printing control instructions will now be processed. These can also be printed. VersaForm XL will ask:

```
Print the control instructions? (Y/N) N
```

2. Turn on the printer and enter **Y** to have the printing control instructions (selection conditions) printed. Or enter **N**, and they will be displayed on the screen.

The Printing Process

As the program runs, it displays the key item of each form and shows whether or not the form was printed. This is an action log which can also be printed (or placed on a text file) so you will have a permanent record.

VersaForm XL will ask if you want to use a print format. If you do, you will see a menu of all the print formats you have defined, from which you may choose the one you want to use.

If you don't use a print format, your forms will be printed as they appear on the screen. Next you must choose where you want the output to go. Usually output will be sent directly to the printer, but sometimes you may want it saved for printing later or sent to a remote device. VersaForm XL will ask:

```
Output directly to printer? (Y/N)
```

1. Enter **Y** if you want to print immediately. Or enter **N** if you want the output to go directly to a disk file or to another device.

The next steps depend upon special print fonts (character style) your printer may have, and the instructions you have given VersaForm XL for the use of a print control sequence. (See Chapter 11, "Setup and Security.")

If your system is configured for a print control sequence, you will be asked:

```
Send a control sequence to the printer? (Y/N)
```


2. Enter **Y** if you wish the pre-defined control sequence to be sent to the printer.

Whether you require a sequence or not, VersaForm XL will ask:

Pause between pages? (Y/N)

3. Enter **Y** if you are using hand-fed forms. Enter **N** to use continuous feed paper. VersaForm XL will ask whether you want to have a single test form printed.

Test Form alignment? (Y/N)

4. Enter **Y** so you can adjust the paper if necessary. If you're sure of the alignment, enter **N** and VersaForm XL will begin printing. If you are using single sheets that must be fed by hand, press  after each page.

If you are NOT directing the output to a printer now, you need to tell VersaForm XL where to send it. Follow the prompts to identify the file that is to contain the output.

MANUAL SELECTION IN COPY/PRINT FORMS

If you have chosen manual selection, VersaForm XL will identify each form in succession, by key item, and ask if you want to print it. For example, if the key item is "ACCT#", VersaForm XL will ask:

ACCT# = (account number). Print the form? (Y/N/Q-Quit)

Enter **Y** to print, or enter **N** if you don't want the form printed. **Q** will return to the original menu.

After each form is printed, VersaForm XL will display a tally:

3 printed of 5

Chapter 9

COPY FORMS AND DATA

Overview

There are two separate functions that can copy forms or other information from one file to another.

Use the COPY OR PRINT FORMS function to:

- * Copy filled-in forms from one file to another. You could use this to begin a new file or to copy forms from an active to an inactive file; you may copy all forms in a file or choose selectively.
- * Copy print formats, or control instructions for reports, copying, and printing on preprinted forms.

Use the COPY BY NAME function to:

- * Copy all data from an existing file to a file with a new form design. The new file may contain more or fewer fields or a different key.

Copy Filled-in Forms

A filled-in form can be copied to another file which contains a form of the same design. (To copy the form design, refer to Chapter 4, "Create a File and Design a Form," the section called Copying an Existing Form Design.)

1. Select COPY OR PRINT FORMS from the Main Menu.
2. From the Copy/Print function menu, select option 1, Copy Forms.

SELECT THE FORMS TO BE COPIED

You may specify either automatic, manual, or no selection of the forms to be copied. If you choose "automatic selection," you can use a selection condition to copy the forms. These options are the same as the options you have when using selection conditions in a report. Detailed instructions on using selection conditions is given in Chapter 7 "Reports".

The Copying Process

As the Copy/Print Program runs, the key item of each form in the original file is displayed, with a message indicating whether the form was copied. In addition, you may have a printed record of which forms were copied. Before beginning the copying process, VersaForm XL checks that the form design in the file you're copying TO matches the one in the file you're copying FROM. If they don't match in all important respects, you'll see:

Warning: Forms don't match. Continue anyhow? (Y/N)

If you key in N, the copy function will terminate.

- * It is possible to override this warning and begin copying forms despite the mismatch. However, this should be done only in unusual circumstances and when you are certain of the results, for you risk destroying the usefulness of the file you are copying TO.
- * As an alternative, you may use the COPY BY NAME function, described later in this chapter, to transfer data from one form to a another form which is different.

NOTE: The best way to ensure that the forms match is to begin the program by copying the form design from the old file to the new, as recommended at the beginning of this chapter.

If the forms match, VersaForm XL will begin the copying process, displaying the key item of each form as it is read.

MANUAL SELECTION

If you chose manual selection of forms to be copied, VersaForm XL will identify each form by its key item and ask if you want it copied. Depending on whether you answer Y(es) or N(o), VersaForm XL will either copy the form or go on to the next form.

After each form is copied, you will see a running tally:

3 copied of 5

DUPLICATES

If a form you've chosen to copy has a key item identical to one in the file you're copying TO, VersaForm XL will tell you:

Duplicate key on index Delete the old form? (Y/N)

In this case, you have two choices:

- * Respond **Y** to remove the old form and replace it with the new copy.
- * Respond **N** skip copying this form. In either case, the action log will record your choice.

NOTE: Copying forms does not change the original file. The forms you copied may be kept in that file or removed (using the Filing function).

USE COPY/PRINT TO REMOVE FORMS

One way to remove forms from a file is to use the Copy/Print Program again, copying to a DIFFERENT file all the forms that weren't copied the first time. In this way, your original file, containing ALL the forms, could be archived, and the two new files retained for daily use.

Copy Print Formats and Control Instructions

The COPY OR PRINT FORMS function may also be used to copy control information. For example, if you have set up Report control Instructions on one file and would like the same instructions available on another file (with the same kind of form), you may copy them from the first to the second.

The following options are listed on the Copy/Print menu, in addition to filled-in forms:

- * Report Control Instructions
- * Print Formats
- * Printing Control Instructions
- * Copying Control Instructions
- * Procedures--both source and code
- * Procedures--code only (When you copy procedure code only, your procedures will be operable, but no one will be able to read or change them.)

The steps are the same as for copying forms, except there is no automatic selection. You must either copy all the instructions or formats, or select them manually.

Report Control Instructions, Printing Control Instructions, and Copying Control Instructions are all stored in filled-in forms. Each set of instructions may require more than one instruction form. For example:

- * A set of Report Control Instructions called SALES would be contained on forms identified as SALESR1 (the form that tells which items to print); SALESS1 (the form that tells which items to select); and SALEST1 (the form that specifies sorting and totaling).
- * Thus, in order to copy the complete set of instructions, you would copy all Report Control Instruction forms whose names begin with SALES.

Transfer Data with Copy By Name

COPY BY NAME allows you to transfer data from an existing form to a new and different form, wherever the item names match. Figure 9-1 shows an existing form.

ALPHA TOOLS, INC.	
Serving The Bay Area Since 1925	
CUSTOMER	ACCT#
ADDRESS	PHONE
CITY	STATE ... ZIP
BILLING DATE	CODE

Figure 9-1

Figure 9-2 shows the same form with two new items added--AREA CODE and EXT. The length of CUSTOMER, ADDRESS, and ZIP have been increased, PHONE has been moved, and the order of some items has been changed.

ALPHA TOOLS, INC.	
Serving The Bay Area Since 1925	
CUSTOMER	ACCT#
ADDRESS	PHONE
CITY	STATE ... ZIP
AREA CODE ...	PHONE EXT
BILLING DATE	CODE

Figure 9-2

To redesign a form in a new file, when you plan to transfer data:

1. Copy the existing form design to a new file (discussed in Chapter 4, "Create a File and Design a Form.")
2. Change the design in any way, but be sure item names match where data is to be transferred.

You may increase or decrease the length of items, and change their positions on the new form; but information transferred into items that have been shortened will be truncated if necessary.

NOTE: A different key item may be designated for the new form.

HOW TO USE COPY BY NAME

1. Select #7 from the Main Menu for "VersaForm XL Utilities," then select #1, "Copy by name."
2. VersaForm XL will ask for the name of the file you are copying TO, then you are asked for the name of the file you are copying FROM.

COPY BY NAME will list all items from both forms and indicate which will be transferred.

Remember, item names must match if data is to be transferred.

The screen will resemble Figure 9-3.

```

                                TRANSFER LIST

1 <CUSTOMER> WILL BE TRANSFERRED
2 <ACCT#> WILL BE TRANSFERRED
3 <ADDRESS> WILL BE TRANSFERRED
4 <CITY> WILL BE TRANSFERRED
5 <STATE> WILL BE TRANSFERRED
6 <ZIP> WILL BE TRANSFERRED
7 <AREA CODE> NOT PRESENT IN OLDDISK.SAMPLE
  & WILL NOT BE TRANSFERRED
8 <PHONE> WILL BE TRANSFERRED
9 <EXT> NOT PRESENT IN OLDDISK.SAMPLE
  & WILL NOT BE TRANSFERRED
10 <BILLING DATE> WILL BE TRANSFERRED
11 <CODE> WILL BE TRANSFERRED
```

Figure 9-3

After listing the items, COPY BY NAME will begin the actual transfer, and will list the forms (identified by their key items) being transferred (Figure 9-4):

```

TRANSFERRING FROM OLDDISK:SAMPLE
  TO NEWDISK:SAMPLE2

```

```

1 <ACCT#>CAR12344
  TRANSFERRED
2 <ACCT#>CAR33251
  TRANSFERRED
3 <ACCT#>COO45678
  TRANSFERRED
4 <ACCT#>FLE34521
  TRANSFERRED
5 <ACCT#>JOY34521
  TRANSFERRED
6 <ACCT#>MAS24521
  TRANSFERRED
7 <ACCT#>SAW33521
  TRANSFERRED

```

```

7 FORMS TRANSFERRED
*** TRANSFER COMPLETED ***

```

Figure 9-4

Figure 9-5 shows how a form might look in the original file.

```

          ALPHA TOOLS, INC.
    Serving The Bay Area Since 1925

```

```

CUSTOMER Bill Carpenter  ACCT# CAR12344
ADDRESS 321 Maple St.    PHONE 445 0809
CITY Jackson             STATE MI  ZIP 44567
BILLING DATE 11/15/80    CODE 54-7Y

```

Figure 9-5

Figure 9-6 shows how the new version would look after the transfer.

```

          ALPHA TOOLS, INC.
    Serving The Bay Area Since 1925

```

```

CUSTOMER Bill Carpenter      ACCT# CAR12344
ADDRESS 321 Maple St.
CITY Jackson                 STATE MI  ZIP 44567-1234
AREA CODE ... PHONE 445 0809 EXT .....
BILLING DATE 11/15/80        CODE 54-7Y

```

Figure 9-6

Note that all the data items with corresponding names have been filled in, even though they are not in the same position. AREA CODE and EXT have not been filled in, since they are new items.

Remember, if the item you're copying data FROM is longer than the item you're copying TO, the system will transfer the data but will truncate it.

DUPLICATE FORMS

When the transferring process begins, the system will notify you if there are duplicate forms (forms with the same keys), as in Figure 9-7:

```

TRANSFERRING FROM OLDDISK:SAMPLE
  TO NEWDISK;SAMPLE2

1 <ACCT#> CAR12344
   IS ALREADY IN NEWDISK.SAMPLE2
   REPLACE WITH NEW FORM? (Y/N)
1 <ACCT#> CAR12344
   TRANSFERRED

2 <ACCT#> CAR33251
   IS ALREADY IN NEWDISK.SAMPLE2
   REPLACE WITH NEW FORM? (Y/N)
   NOT TRANSFERRED

```

If you
answer Y,
you will
see:
<----

If you
answer N,
you will
see:
<----

Figure 9-7

If you reply **Y** to have the form transferred, it will replace the form and any data on it that is already on the file you're copying TO and the old data will be lost.

CHANGING THE KEY ITEM

COPY BY NAME permits new forms to have different keys from the old ones.

NOTE:The data for the key item(s) on the file you're copying TO must be found on the file you're copying FROM. Otherwise, the program will not be able to perform the copying operation.

You may choose a different key item when you redesign the form. Then, when COPY BY NAME is run, the new forms will be listed during the transfer process by their new key(s).

Suppose that when the Alpha Tools form was redesigned, we replaced ACCT# as a key item with CUSTOMER and BILLING DATE as a two-part key.

When the forms are transferred, the function will acknowledge the new keys in a display resembling Figure 9-8.

```

TRANSFERRING FROM OLDDISK:SAMPLE
TO NEWDISK:SAMPLE2

1 <ACCT#>CAR12344 -->
  <CUSTOMER>Chas Carpenter,
  <BILLING DATE> 11/15/80
  TRANSFERRED
2 <ACCT#>CAR33251 -->
  <CUSTOMER>Ed Cartwright,
  <BILLING DATE> 11/14/80
  TRANSFERRED
\\\/\\\/\\\/\\\/\\\/\\\/\\\/\\\/\\\/\\\/\\\/\\\/\\\/\\\/\\\/\\\/

\\\/\\\/\\\/\\\/\\\/\\\/\\\/\\\/\\\/\\\/\\\/\\\/\\\/\\\/\\\/\\\/
7 <ACCT#>SAW33521 -->
  <CUSTOMER>Geo Sawyer,
  <BILLING DATE> 11/15/80
  TRANSFERRED

7 FORMS TRANSFERRED
*** TRANSFER COMPLETED ***

```

Figure 9-8

WARNING: Transferred values won't be recalculated or rechecked. If the form you're copying TO was designed with DIFFERENT checking or calculation options than the form you're copying FROM, data that is transferred might not be correct according to the checking or calculation specifications in the new form.

The program does not recalculate or recheck the values that are transferred; thus, they will still follow the checking and calculation rules of the old form.

Chapter 10

PRINT MAILING LABELS

PROGRAM FEATURES AND OVERVIEW

- * Prints up to nine labels across paper; nine items per label; nine lines per label.
- * Compresses information by removing excess blanks and blank lines.
- * Skips exact duplicates if you choose.

Mailing Labels are produced in three steps:

1. 1. Create and run a report that produces the information that you want on your labels. This produces an export file, the label text file, containing the data to be printed on your labels.
2. Enter the instructions for printing the items on your labels using the Mailing Label Printer function.
3. Print the labels.

CREATING THE LABEL TEXT FILE WITH A REPORT

Before printing labels, you must prepare a label text file containing the data from which your labels will be produced. The file is created by using the Export option of the VersaForm XL Report function.

Follow the instructions in Chapter 7, "Reports". When entering the Report Control Instructions

- Choose just the items to be printed; for example, NAME, ADDRESS, CITY, STATE, and ZIP for an address label.
- Enter 1 beside "Export?" on the Report Definition form when it's displayed.
- If you wish, you can choose File output and enter the label text file name on the Report Definition Form.

You may enter selection conditions and choose sorting in the manner described for reports.

As VersaForm XL reaches the final stage of producing the report, you'll be asked if you want to print the labels immediately. If you do, answer **Y** and you'll go directly to the Label Description step, below.

If you want to print the labels later, you'll be asked to identify the "output" file which will hold the labels until you want to print them. When asked to enter a file name, enter a suitable file name. "LABELS" will do just fine. VersaForm XL will create the text file, which you will use with the MAILING LABEL PRINTER function to produce labels.

ENTERING THE INSTRUCTIONS

Select Mailing Label Printer from the Main Menu.

When requested by the system, enter the name of the text file you've created, and press Enter.

VersaForm XL will ask for the information it needs to correctly position and print the items on your labels. There are two kinds of information it needs--a label description (how wide the labels are, how tall, etc.), and label setup information--where to print the individual fields on the label.

Label Description

You'll see a list such as the one below:

Laser	1 1/3 x 4
Laser	1 x 2 5/8
Pinfeed	3 1/2 x 15/16
Pinfeed	4 x 1 7/16

Add a label definition	
Change a label definition	
Remove a label definition	
Print line and column numbers	

If you have already entered a label description for the label that you are using, simply choose that label from the list. To enter or change a label description, choose the appropriate option. Before you do that, however, you may need to print line and column numbers on your labels, so you will know how many characters will fit on them. To do this:


Place your mailing labels in the printer, and adjust the paper so that the printer is ready to print at the top of the paper. Choose "Print line and column numbers".

VersaForm XL will ask about the width of the paper you're using:


```

Print how many
columns?   (40)
Max = 200
    
```

Enter the number that equals the width (the number of characters wide) of the paper the labels are on, or use the default (40).

As instructed by an on-screen message, turn on the printer and press . The system will print line and column numbers on the labels so you can easily see where the items will be positioned. (Figure 10-1)

```

01      1      2      3      4      5      6      7      8
02 456789012345678901234567890123456789012345678901234567890
03
04      1      2      3      4      5      6      7      8
05 456789012345678901234567890123456789012345678901234567890
06
07      1      2      3      4      5      6      7      8
08 456789012345678901234567890123456789012345678901234567890
09
10      1      2      3      4      5      6      7      8
    
```

Figure 10-1

When you enter or change a label description, you'll see the screen in Figure 10-2.

```

Label Definition

Label_Name Pinfeed          Label_Type  3 1/2 x 15/16

Num_across 1..      Number of labels across the paper
Label_width 35.     Number of characters to be printed on one line of each
label
Left_margin ..0    Number of characters before printing starts
Label_spacing ...  Number of characters between labels


Label_height 6..   Number of lines from first line of one label to first
line of the next
Continuous_feed Y  Y if labels are continuous, N if on separate pages
  Num_down .      Number of labels down the page (only if not continuous)
  Top_margin .    Number of lines before printing (only if not continuous)

Escape Sequences:
  Reset Esc Seq .....
  Initial Esc Seq .....
  Ending Esc Seq .....
    
```

Figure 10-2 Label Definition

In Figure 10-2, the fields are:

Num_across	The number of labels across the paper.
Label_width	The number of characters that will fit on one line of one label.
Left_margin	The number of characters that should be skipped before printing the first character on the leftmost label.
Label_spacing	Used only if there is more than one label across the paper. Enter the number of characters between labels.
Label_height	The number of lines between the first line of one label and the first line of the next.
Continuous_feed	Enter Y if the labels are continuously mounted, as for a dot-matrix printer. Enter N if they are on separate sheets.
Num_down	If the labels are on separate sheets, how many are there down the sheet? For instance, if each page has 30 labels, three across and 10 down, enter 10.
Top_Margin	If the labels are on separate sheets, how many lines should the program space down at the top of each sheet?
Reset Esc Seq Initial Esc Seq Ending Esc Seq	You may enter printer escape sequences: the reset and initial escape sequences are sent before printing begins; the ending sequence is sent after printing.


When you are done entering the description, Save (). Then you'll see the form for entering the label setup--the relation between the fields and the label. The fields you've chosen for your labels will already be entered on the form (Figure 10-3).

Label Setup		
Copies	.1	Number of copies of each label
Print_dups?	N	Should duplicates be printed? (Y/N)
L#	Field_Name	Line_of_the_Label
1	Customer	1
2	Address:	2
3	City	3
4	State	3
5	zip	3
6		

Figure 10-3 Label Setup

Use the label setup to specify which line to print each item on, and whether any of the items are to be printed on the same lines. For example, you may want CITY, STATE, and ZIP together on a single line, as in the above example.

You may also choose how many copies of each label to print, and whether you want the system to eliminate duplicate labels on your file. Only exact duplicates can be eliminated.

When you Save () , printing will begin.


Chapter 11

SETUP AND SECURITY


The setup functions allow you to configure the system to suit your equipment and your users. On a multi-user system, each user can have his own setup. Different users can have different color schemes, default directories, printer control sequences, and so forth. There is also a system setup file, so you can set up defaults for all users.

HOW TO DO SETUP


1. Start your VersaForm XL system. When asked, "Enter your user ID:" log on as **MANAGER**. Type:

MANAGER and press .

When prompted, "Enter your password:" type:

VF and press .

2. Select #2, Filing, from the VersaForm XL Main Menu.
3. Select your data file :

Accept the default drive letter by pressing .

4. To alter system parameters, enter the file name:

SYSSETUP.VFS

To alter user parameters, enter the file name:

SETUP.VFS



SETUP OPTIONS

Most setup options appear on both SETUP.VFS and SYSSETUP.VFS. Function keys, however, can be configured only in SYSSETUP.VFS. If you specify an option in both places, the one in SETUP.VFS prevails. This allows you to set up defaults for everyone in SYSSETUP.VFS, and special setup for each user in SETUP.VFS. Some of the setup fields control the REPORT function. Report options chosen in individual reports will override both SETUP.VFS and SYSSETUP.VFS report options.

VersaForm System Setup	
Name	MANAGER Sharing Mode S (Share/Excl/ReadOnly/?)
Display:	Use_Reverse? Y (Y or N) Dummy_character .
Colors:	Forms 30↓ Validated_Data 48↓ Error_box 52↓Info_Box 48↓ Menus 112↓ Menu_Hilite 23↓ Menu_Bold 116↓ Zoom 11↓
Printer:	Device_name Fill_character . Default_width 80 Default_length 66 Test_ready? Y (Y/N) FormFeed Y (Y/N) Send_Line_Feed N (Y/N) Left Margin .. Default_prt_ctl
Files:	User_file_path Work_file_path
Other:	Auto_last_line N (Y/N) US Date Y (Y/N) Decimal . Date_Character / Time_Character : Auto_Prompt . (Y/N) Pulldown_Menu Y (Y/N)
Multi:	Rollback_Enabled Y (Y/N)

Figure 11-1 Setup Options

- Name** In this field enter the user name, an eight character unique identifier. In the file, SYSSETUP.VFS, there will be only one user form, that belonging to MANAGER. In the file SETUP.VFS each user may have his own setup options saved in a form with his user ID.
- Sharing Mode** This field may be marked Share, Exclusive, Read only, or "?" (**S/E/R/?**), with Share being the normal multi-user mode. A user in exclusive mode causes VersaForm XL to run as a single user system, denying access to all other users while he has exclusive access to the file. A read only user may get data from a file but make no changes. For example, a read only user may run reports knowing that his data may not be current to the latest transaction, yet allow other users to continue making changes in the same file. By entering a ? in this field you tell VersaForm XL you want to select your sharing mode when you log on to the system. For a more complete discussion see the section titled sharing:Operational Modes in Chapter 12.

Use Reverse	Entering a Y in this field will tell VersaForm XL to use reverse video -- a monochrome display is light on dark for item names and unvalidated data. Validated data is displayed dark on light. If you have a color monitor, using reverse video will allow more color combinations.
Dummy Characters	Often VersaForm XL must display a character to indicate a blank space on a form. Normally, this will be a blank space, shown in color or reverse video. If you do not use color or reverse video, you may want to enter a different default fill character in this field.
Forms Validated Data Error_Box, Info_Box, Menus, Menu_Hilite, Menu_Bold, Zoom	If you have a color monitor you may select the colors you want to use. Different color combinations may be selected for different uses. Each of these fields have pick lists ( ) which provide a menu of colors.
PRINTER:	Reserved for future use.
Device Name	
Fill Character	VersaForm XL can use a character to indicate a blank space on a printed form. Normally, this will be a blank space. You may enter a different default fill character in this field.
Default_width	This is the page width that will be used by the REPORT Function, unless the Report Control Instructions specify otherwise. It can be any value between 20 and 200.
Default_length	This is used by the REPORT Function in the same way as default page width. It can be any value between 3 and 255.
Test_ready	Normally VersaForm XL will test the printer before printing. Some "compatible" computers do not execute this test correctly. This option is provided so the test can be bypassed in such cases. If the test is not made, VersaForm XL will always assume that the printer is ready. Enter Y in this field to select the printer test.
Form_Feed, Send_Line_Feed	If your printer honors the ASCII form feed character, this characteristic may be used by VersaForm XL to speed printing. Enter a Y in the Form_Feed field if appropriate. The Send_Line_Feed field is currently not used.
Left_Margin	The left margin indents reports by a specified number of characters. The default is 0. If you want to print reports

left indented 1 inch and you are using 10 characters per inch on your printer (for instance, Pica) enter 10 in this field.

Default_Prt_Ctl

Some printers can print characters of different sizes. For example in "compressed mode" printing, 132 characters are printed across an 8-1/2 inch page instead of 80 (pica type) or 96 (elite).

VersaForm XL can instruct the printer to activate special features, such as changing the character size, via a "print control sequence."

The numbers that make up the sequence for your particular printer must be found in your printer manual.

Here you can enter a default print control sequence to be used by VersaForm XL. Enter the sequence in ASCII codes and separate each number with a backslash character, \.

For example, to enter a default sequence for compressed printing on Epson printers, enter: 27\15.

Alternatively, you may enter a character string in the print control sequence. For example, to change an HP LaserJet to compressed mode, enter the control sequence \27&k2S. For more detail, see the chapter on Reports.

Note that Reports may have several print control sequences to control printing. Setting up print control sequences in reports is discussed in the Reports chapter. This default sequence, if entered, can be used in any portion of the VersaForm XL program that outputs to the printer.

FILES: These tell VersaForm XL where to find user data files and the report work disk or files.

When VersaForm XL asks you for a file name, it offers a default drive letter or path name (usually c:). If your files are in a subdirectory or on a different disk, you may change this default.

User_File_Path

In this field you may enter the drive letter and full path name to use as a default path for accessing data files. For example: c:\vf\data.

Work_File_Path

In this field you may enter the drive letter of the disk which is to be used for Report Work files, if you don't want to use the default disk. Only the drive letter needs to

be specified. When running reports in VersaForm XL the program will use available storage on the specified disk drives to produce the report.

SETUP OTHER OPTIONS

Auto_Last_Line

If a form design contains a column area, VersaForm XL will always display the form beginning with the first column line on the form. Enter a **Y** in this field to have VersaForm XL display a form with the cursor on the last column line instead.

US_Date

VersaForm XL will automatically use the US date format convention for all date fields (MM/DD/YY). Entering **N** in this field will change the date format to DD/MM/YY.

Decimal

Date_Character

Time_Character

These three fields contain the fill character to be used by VersaForm XL whenever the program automatically calculates or uses decimal numbers, dates and times. The default values are a "." for the decimal character, "/" for the date fill character, and ":" for the time fill character.

Auto_Prompt

If the system is in the auto-prompt mode, the prompt text is automatically displayed whenever the cursor enters a field

Pulldown_Menu

If you prefer the old-style command menus that were standard on VersaForm before Version 7, enter **N** here. These menus, of course, do not recognize mouse-clicks. This field is present only on SYSSETUP.

Rollback_ Enabled;

Controls whether Rollback is enabled. It is possible for an installed user to have no rollback capability.

Table of Assignable Function Keys			
L#	FunctionName	ASCII	ExtendedCode?
1	Validate	59	Y
2	Save	60	Y .
.	.	.	.

Figure 11-2 Function Key Options

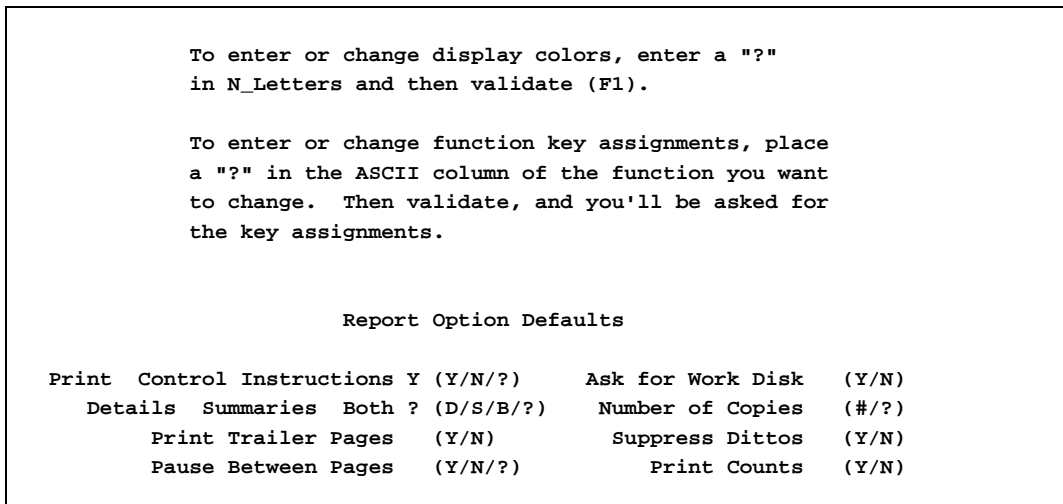


Figure 11-3 Report Options

FUNCTION KEY OPTIONS

Function key assignments (Figure 11-2) may be set only on SYSSETUP.VFS, not in SETUP.VFS. Use Control-PgDn to see the portion of the screen that contains these items.

VersaForm XL is delivered with function key assignments as described in this manual. You may change these by entering the keyboard codes you want to use, or by entering a question mark in the ASCII column of the command you want to change. When you validate you will be asked to press the key you want to use and the field will be filled in automatically.

REPORT OPTIONS

Use Control-right arrow to see the portion of the screen that contains report options (Figure 11-3).

These are the default options for your reports; they may be overridden by choices made on each report. (See the Reports section of these notes.)

Adding Users / Security


The Security subsystem allows you to control access in several ways. You may allow a user to use only certain VersaForm XL functions (e.g., Filing and Reports but not Form Design), or only certain files, or only certain reports on those files.

Each user must "log on" to the system before the Main Menu appears, and you can require that the user enter a password. A security file called USERS.VFS (See figure 11-4 below) must contain at least one form for each user; if the user's name is not in this file he will not be able to log on. Along with the user's name, (an 8-character identifier, the USERID), the user's record in the USERS.VFS file may contain a password, a checklist of the system options that he has authority to use, and a list of protected files that he may access.

If there is a password in the user's registration form, it must be entered when he or she logs on.

To add users to VersaForm XL:

1. When asked, "Enter your user ID:" Type:

MANAGER and press .

When prompted, "Enter your password:" Type MANAGER's password:

VF and press .

2. From the VersaForm XL Main Menu, select #2, Filing. VersaForm will ask for the drive letter, path and then the name of your file. Enter

USERS.VFS and press enter.

Each time a unique name is entered into the field "Name" and the form is saved, a new USERID is added. This form is called the primary user registration form. The user may now login with the USERID and password in his primary user registration form.

USERS.VFS has a two part key, composed of the USERID (Name) and a file name. In the user's primary registration form, only the USERID is used; the file name must be blank. The file name part of the key is used only in a secondary registration form (see below).

Normally users may access files whether or not the file name appears in the security file. But, if the file was designated as "protected" only users who have the file name in their security file record can use it. Files can be designated as "protected files" only when they are designed or re-designed using VersaForm XL's form design function.

```

                                USER REGISTRATION

Name                               Password
File                               (for report access lists only)
AUTHORITIES:      All      Design      RptFmt_Design
                  Filing   Reports   Copy_Utills   System_Utills

                                Access List for Files and Reports
L# .....File/Other_Name..... Read   RdWrt   Rpts
1
2
3
4
    
```

Figure 11-4 User Registration Form

THE USER REGISTRATION FORM

Name Name (USERID) is the primary key, and File is the secondary key. To set up a new user, fill in only the Name field, and leave the File field blank. This is the primary user registration form for that user; it is used to grant permission to use specific VersaForm XL functions and to grant access to specific files.

The File field is used only to create secondary user registration forms. These are used to specify access to specific reports within that file.

Password If entered, this becomes the password for this user. Only enter a password on the main registration form for the user, that is, the form with the user NAME but with a blank FILE field,

Authorities: To give a user access to all of VersaForm XL's functions, enter a **Y** in the ALL field. Otherwise, specify access to individual functions with a **Y** or **N**.

All

Design

Rpt_fmt_Design

Filing

Reports

Copy_Utills

System_Utills

File/ Other_Name On the main user registration form, this field specifies the list of protected files to which this user can have access (Figure 11-5). On a form on which the File field (see above) is filled in, this field specifies the list of reports on that particular file that the user can access. (Figure 11-6)

Rpts When there is a file name in the first column, enter **Y** here to grant access to all reports.

Read These fields are reserved for future use.

RdWrt

USER REGISTRATION				
Name	CJA	Password	ME	
File	(for report access lists only)			
AUTHORITIES:	All Y	Design	RptFmt Design	
Filing	Reports	Copy Utils	System Utils	
Access List for Files and Reports				
L#	File/Other_Name	Read	RdWrt	Rpts
1	c:\cja\ledger.v5a			y
2	c:\cja\ledgtst2			n
3				
4				

Figure 11-5 Filled in user registration form. Note filename is blank.

Reports can be individually protected. If a file is not protected, then anyone who has authority to run reports can run any report. If it is protected, the user must have permission either to run that report or to run all reports on that file. The list of files in the user's security record has a field that grants permission to use all the reports on that file. If there isn't a **Y** in that field, then the user can only use specific reports. The specific reports that he can run must be listed by name in a second record on the security file, one with the same USERID but which has the file name entered in the file name field (the one that forms the second part of the key. (see Figure 11-6 below).

The security file (USERS.VFS) is protected. When the system is delivered, only the user name MANAGER has access via Filing. MANAGER's password is VF. You may change this password in order to prevent anyone else from logging on as MANAGER.

When you change this password, don't forget it. The system won't tell you what it is.

There is a file called V.BAT which demonstrates how to bypass entering the USERID and password. In effect this makes starting VersaForm XL the same as in earlier releases.

When you design a form you may also request the system to prevent deletions on a file. This renders the Delete and Remove commands inoperable, and prevents changes in column lines already entered. This feature is useful for accounting applications.

```

                                USER REGISTRATION

Name CJA                                Password
File LEDGER.V5A                        (for report access lists only)
AUTHORITIES:      All      Design      Rpt_Fmt_Design
      Filing      Reports      Copy_Utills      System_Utills

                                Access List for Files and Reports
L# .....File/Other_Name.....      Read      RdWrt      Rpts
1 charges
2 aged
3
4

```

Figure 11-6 Authorizing specific reports. Note filename is filled in.

WARNING. This security function is designed to make unauthorized attempts to use the VersaForm XL system more difficult. It is not absolute, however, and VersaForm Systems makes no representation or guarantee that it cannot be broken. It should be understood that the underlying operating system, DOS, is itself not secure and permits anyone with sufficient technical capability to access and change any data at all.

Chapter 12

MULTI-USER OPERATION

Multi-User Features

VersaForm XL supports multi-user operation by:

- 1) Providing a way of locking both files and individual records so one user can update data without interfering with another.
- 2) Dividing the work that a user does into transactions. A transaction is a logical unit of work in a database--maybe an order or payment entry --that you want to succeed or fail as a whole.
- 3) Providing a security system to prevent unauthorized access and to allow different users to have different access capabilities.

Design features are:

- Existing applications will run correctly in a multi-user environment without change. Note however that VersaForm XL procedures may require some modification to enhance their performance.
- Multi-User VersaForm XL assures correct operation by performing the required file and record locking automatically, without any action on the part of the user.
- Programmers may disable automatic locking and control the multi-user functions themselves.
- VersaForm XL will run on a wide variety of networks. The system is designed for fast networks such as IBM or Novell. Although VersaForm XL may run on RS-232 (no-slot) LANs, good performance on these LANs was not a design goal and is not assured.

Transactions

A transaction begins at Filing startup, or when the previous transaction ends. Transactions can end in two ways--rollback or commit.

To roll back a transaction is to undo it. All affected files are returned to their state (as far as this transaction is concerned) as of the beginning of the transaction.

Committing a transaction makes the transaction permanent. After a commit you can no longer roll back.



When a transaction ends, all locks acquired in the course of that transaction are released, except for the current form in each open file. Locks on the current forms are not released, but exclusive locks become shared locks. Thus, each transaction starts with shared locks on the current forms (if any).

Normally, locks accumulate as records are read and written until the end of the transaction. Holding locks until transactions end is a good practice, as it prevents users from altering each other's data while the transaction is in progress.

- o If the transaction is rolled back, all records for that transaction are returned to their state as of the beginning of the transaction. Any records that were added to the file are removed, and any records that were removed are restored.
- o If the transaction is committed, all records that were saved to provide rollback capability for that transaction are freed.

When a transaction accumulates 50 record locks in a file, VersaForm XL will attempt to lock the file automatically. This prevents a buildup of locks which would slow the program and reduce available memory. Procedures that would retrieve many records should lock the file explicitly, to avoid the slowdown that would be caused by many records being locked individually.

Transactions end:

- o Automatically (by a commit), when a Save command () is executed (if there is no Save procedure). Save-Continue () does not commit.
- o Automatically (commit), when a Clear, Next, or Back command is executed. Not, of course, when the Continue version is.
- o Automatically (commit), when the user EXITs Filing.
- o When a user requests either Rollback or Commit.
- o When a procedure requests either Rollback or Commit.

LOCKING

On a multi-user system, some mechanism is needed to prevent users from interfering with each other. Imagine the following situation: User A reads an invoice. While he's deciding what to do, User B reads it, too. User B changes it, and saves it. Now user A makes his change, and saves the invoice.

This would be a serious error. User B's change is now lost (it's been overwritten), and the file is incorrect.

To ensure correctness of transactions, VersaForm XL locks forms, so that when one user has a form, the other can't change it.

The system provides locks for both individual forms and entire files. In the remainder of this discussion, locks on forms are called Record locks, for consistency with industry terminology. File locks allow quicker file access, but record locks allow two users to access different records in a file without interfering with each other.

Both record (R) and file (F) locks may be either shared locks (S) or exclusive (X) locks. Shared locks allow others to also have shared locks on the same resource. Exclusive locks permit no other locks, whether shared or exclusive.

Thus there are four types of locks: File Shared (FS), File Exclusive (FX), Record Shared (RS), and Record Exclusive (RX). The first lock requested on a file will of course always be granted. Succeeding locks are granted according to the rules in the table below:

		First Lock			
		RS	RX	FS	FX
Second Lock (Different user)	RS	Y	N	Y	N
	RX	N	N	N	N
	FS	Y	N	Y	N
	FX	N	N	N	N

Locking introduces the possibility of deadlock. This happens if two users each hold a lock on data that the other needs in order to continue. For instance, User A updates and locks record 1 and User B updates and locks record 2. So far, so good. But now suppose User B wants to update record 1 and User A wants to update record 2. Neither can go on, because he is blocked by the other. But neither user is done with his transaction.

In this situation one transaction must either be committed (accepting the transaction so far), or rolled back (have its files restored to their state as of the beginning of the transaction). Either of these actions will release the outstanding locks for that user's transaction and thus permit the other user's transaction to continue. Rollbacks and Commits can be initiated by the user or by a procedure. Rollback is intended to be used only in case of a deadlock or other error.

Two important switches are the Locking switch and the Automatic locking switch. Locking is normally on. (It can be turned off from a procedure.) If locking is off, the system does not try to ensure the correctness of transactions--it's up to the user. Once locking is off, it stays off until it is turned on again or until you exit Filing. You should never need to turn locking off.

Automatic locking controls how procedures lock your records. It may be turned off safely in some procedures. This is discussed further below.

LOCKING ON INTERACTIVE COMMANDS

Get, Next, Back, First, Last, Index, Search

Before a record is read from the file, a shared lock for that record (RS) is requested. If it is not granted, the command is not executed.

Data Entry

When data is validated, an exclusive lock for the record on the screen (RX) is requested. Thus an early warning will be given if the record is already in use.

Save-Continue, Remove, Save

Before the record is written to the file, an exclusive lock for that record is requested. If it is not granted, the command is not executed.

Normally, (i.e. if ROLLBACK is on) Save-Continue does not actually write over the previously existing record in the file. Instead, updates are written to new locations on the disk. This takes longer, but it preserves the data for a possible rollback. The system keeps (in RAM) the locations of the previous versions of the updated records.

Similarly, the Remove command does not actually erase the removed record immediately. In both cases, the information is saved until the transaction ends.

When Save is executed, however, the transaction is ended. All the foregoing file changes are committed--that is, the locations of the previous versions of the changed records are forgotten and the disk space they used is freed.

At transaction end all outstanding locks that this user holds are released, except for the form on the screen. The lock on that form becomes a shared lock.

Next, Back, Next-Continue, Back-Continue

Next and Back automatically perform a Commit before fetching the next

form. Thus all locks are cleared. Next_Continue and Back_Continue, like Save_Continue, do not end the transaction, and leave all locks in effect.

LOCKING IN PROCEDURES

Automatic locking controls how the system behaves when procedures are running. If automatic locking is on, the system locks records and files automatically for procedures just as it does for interactive use.

Locking in "Global" procedures

"Global" procedures--those that change many records in a file, will run progressively more and more slowly because the system will lock each record individually and save all the changes for a possible rollback. To run in a multi-user system, you should modify these procedures as follows:

1. At the beginning of the procedure, lock the entire file, and turn both rollback and automatic locking off.
2. At the end of the procedure, turn both rollback and automatic locking back on. Then unlock the file.




Procedures so modified will run at full speed. For more information about how to set and clear automatic locking and rollback, and about locking, see Chapter 16.

Getform, Nextform, Backform, Firstform, Lastform

Before a form is read from the file, a shared lock for that form is requested. If it is not granted, the user is informed and told who holds the lock, and asked whether to retry the lock, roll back the transaction, or simply accept what has been done so far (i.e., commit).

Saveform, Removeform

Before the form is written to or removed from the file, an exclusive lock for that form is requested. If it is not granted, the user is has the same choices as above.

Saveform in a procedure is equivalent to Save and Continue (  in Filing). Following the SAVEFORM (A or B) command with a COMMIT command will save the form and end the transaction. This is equivalent to the Save command ( in Filing).

When automatic locking is off, the programmer must request his own locks. Built-in routines are available to do this. Both file locks and form locks can be requested. When a lock fails, the built-in routine returns the current lock holder's

name to your procedure, which can then inform the operator. Once automatic locking is off, it stays off until it is turned on again or until you exit Filing.

Locking in Reports

When you run a report, the file is automatically locked with a shared lock. Others can run reports or inspect forms, but they cannot change them (since that would involve getting an exclusive lock).

System Failures

If a system failure occurs, or if you re-boot, any locks that were in force will stay in force, as they are written on the disk. Other users will still experience them. When you re-enter Filing for that file, your locks will be removed automatically. For emergency use, there is a command on the Filing screen (LOcks) that lets you remove locks that are "stuck".

Rollback information does not survive system failures, since it is in RAM. Thus any file changes that partially completed transactions made will still be in your files.

OPERATIONAL MODES

There are three modes of file access--sharing, exclusive use, and read-only.

Sharing mode is the normal mode for a multi-user system and uses all the locking and transaction processing features described above.

Exclusive use mode gives you single user operation in the multi-user system. It opens all files in such a way that no one else can use them at all. (It uses the Deny Read-Write option of the DOS Open function.) Locking and rollback are disabled. When you use this mode the system will run faster, but of course you are essentially using the system in single user, not multi-user, mode. Note that since locking is disabled, another user who tries to open a file that you have opened in this mode will not be told that you have locked the file. He will simply receive a message indicating that access to this file is denied.

Read-only access disables locking, and does not permit writes to any file. Thus users can look at files without the overhead of locking, but still permit the file to be shared. They must realize that information so obtained may be inconsistent (because nothing prevents the file being changed while it is being examined, for instance, during a report), but they cannot do any damage.

Choose the sharing mode in the setup file (SETUP.VFS or SYSSETUP.VFS). See Chapter 11 to see how to do this.

TECHNICAL NOTE


Since the locks described above are within the file itself, VersaForm XL must gain exclusive control of the file at a lower level while it is setting and testing the locks. To do this, it uses the record locking function of DOS. (This is provided by DOS in Interrupt 21H, function call 5CH.) Only one byte of the file is locked at this level, and this byte provides a semaphore which tells VersaForm XL whether it can proceed with its locks.

If this lock cannot be obtained, the system retries several times. Since the DOS lock is never held for long, the lock should be granted shortly. If the lock fails, the operator is informed and has the option to retry or to exit from VersaForm XL. There are no other options because no further file activity can be undertaken on the file as long as it is locked.



Multi-User Commands

Several commands specifically support multi-user operation:

SAVE, SAVE_CONTINUE

There are two forms of the SAVE command: SAVE (SA) and SAVE_CONTINUE (). SAVE saves a form and ends the current transaction, releasing all locks except the lock on the current form. If the lock on the current form is exclusive, it is “downgraded” to a shared lock (since the form has not been changed in the now-current transaction). SAVE_CONTINUE saves a form but does not end the transaction, and releases no locks. The screen is unchanged.

NEXT, NEXT_CONTINUE, BACK, BACK_CONTINUE

Similarly, there are two forms of the NEXT and BACK commands: NEXT_CONTINUE () and BACK_CONTINUE () supplement NEXT and BACK. NEXT and BACK end the current transaction, releasing all locks, except for a shared lock on the now-current form. The CONTINUE forms do not end the transaction, and release no locks.


LOCKS

(Esc-U-L)

To issue the LOCKS command you must be in Filing on the file whose locks are to be checked. The LOCKS command has 5 options:

- C Commit the current transaction.
Accept the current transaction's activity to this point and release all of its locks.
- R Rollback the current transaction.
Undo the current transaction's activity and release all of its locks.
- L List all locks in effect on this file.
- U Unlock locks.
Can unlock any locks on this file (no matter who holds them. Only Manager can invoke this function).
- T Test your network's locking capability.
Verify that your network implements the DOS record locking facility (Interrupt 21H, function code 5CH). Without this function, VersaForm XL multi-user facilities don't work.

To perform this test, bring up two work stations on your network. Choose VersaForm XL Filing on both stations, for the same file (any file). From the command menu (Utils) line, choose the Locks command on both stations. Now on the first station, choose the Test option from the Locks command submenu. If DOS record locking is working, you will get a message saying that the file has been locked (if you don't, maybe you don't have a SHARE command in effect on your machine, or your network doesn't have DOS record locking support active).

Next, go to another work station and do the same. The system should report that the file is already locked, and ask if you want to abort or retry. Do neither now, but go back to the first work station and press . This releases the lock. Back to the second station and retry. This time the second station should acquire the lock successfully.

Part III

VersaForm XL Advanced Features

Chapter 13

INTRODUCTION TO PROCEDURES

Procedures are sets of instructions which you give VersaForm XL. They are the most powerful feature of VersaForm XL. Using procedures, there is virtually no limit to what you can do.

Procedures can access more than one file at a time. For example, when you're working on an invoice file, a two-line procedure can automatically look up a description and a price from a large inventory file--and the example in the next chapter shows you just how to do that.

Procedures may be simple or complex, depending on your needs. They enable you to:

- Look up data in another VersaForm XL file and transfer data to and from your current file.
- Perform calculations and/or make logical decisions.
- Change data automatically throughout your file.
- Conduct a dialogue between VersaForm XL and the operator through a series of on-screen questions and operator responses.
- Run a report from within a procedure
- Read and write to ASCII files
- Print very complex forms

With this added flexibility in meeting your particular forms processing needs, you'll be able to integrate different VersaForm XL files into a comprehensive application system.

A Simple Look-Up Procedure

In this chapter, we will illustrate a simple "look-up" procedure and explain how to enter it.

You can use a VersaForm XL procedure to look up data in another VersaForm XL file and transfer it to the file you're working on. For many applications, a look-up procedure may be the only one you need. The procedure illustrated in this chapter is only two lines long. Suppose you're presently working on your Invoice file (Figure 13-1).

```

                ALPHA TOOLS INC
                SERVING THE BAY AREA SINCE 1925

                INVOICE

                CUSTOMER Jane Steel..... ACCT# STE12345
                ADDRESS 123 Main St..... PHONE .....
                CITY Elm Park..... STATE IL ZIP 23456
                ORDER DATE ..... CLERK .....

                L# QTY STOCK#↓ DESCRIPTION PRICE AMOUNT.
                01 30  A44...  .....  .....

                SUBTOTAL .....
                TAX .....
                TOTAL .....

```

Figure 13-1

You've filled in QTY and STOCK#, and now you'd like VersaForm XL to fill in DESCRIPTION and PRICE automatically. You know that the values for those items can be found on some particular form in your Inventory file, even though the item names are different. Notice that DESCRIPTION and PRICE in Figure 13-1 correspond to PARTNAME and STDPRICE in Figure 13-2.

```

                INVENTORY

                PARTNO A44
                PARTNAME Elec Drill
                ONHAND ...136
                BACKORDERED .....
                STDPRICE 20.00

```

Figure 13-2

By writing a procedure, you can have VersaForm XL 1) locate the correct form in the Inventory file, and 2) transfer the data you want to the proper items on your Invoice form.

In this example, you need to tell VersaForm XL to locate the Inventory form whose PARTNO value matches the STOCK# value (A44) on the current Invoice form. PARTNO is the key item that identifies each form in the Inventory file.

You must also specify which data to transfer, and where to put it. In this case, VersaForm XL will use the values in PARTNAME and STDPRICE to fill in the DESCRIPTION and PRICE items on your Invoice form (Figure 13-3).

```

                ALPHA TOOLS INC.
                SERVING THE BAY AREA SINCE 1925

                INVOICE

                CUSTOMER Jane Steel..... ACCT# STE12345
                ADDRESS 123 Main St..... PHONE .....
                CITY Elm Park..... STATE IL ZIP 23456
                ORDER DATE ..... CLERK .....

                L# QTY STOCK#↓ DESCRIPTION PRICE AMOUNT.
                01 30  A44      Elec Drill  20.00 .....

                SUBTOTAL .....
                 TAX .....
                 TOTAL .....
  
```

Figure 13-3

When you're ready to write a procedure, (see "Entering a Procedure", below) VersaForm XL will display a Procedure Instructions Form for you to fill in (Figure 13-4).

```

                PROCEDURE INSTRUCTIONS

                Procedure Name *CHECKING
                Secondary File INVENTORY
                Key-from1 STOCK#..... Key-from2 .....

                L# .....Procedure.....
                01 DESCRIPTION := PARTNAME;
                02 PRICE := STDPRICE;
  
```

Figure 13-4

The completed Procedure in Figure 13-4 tells VersaForm XL all it needs to know to locate the right form in the Inventory file and transfer data from it to the Invoice form in Figure 13-3. We'll see below how this procedure was written.

PRIMARY AND SECONDARY FILES

A look-up procedure such as the one we're illustrating here uses two files: a "primary" (A) file and a "secondary" (B) file.

The primary file is the one you'll be working on when the procedure is executed. When you enter a procedure into a file, that is its primary file. In this example, the invoice file called SAMPLE is your primary, or current, file, and the particular form you're working on from this file is the primary form.

The secondary file is the one VersaForm XL uses to get the data that you want transferred. In this example, INVENTORY (Inventory) is the name of the secondary file, and the particular form in this file that has the correct data is called the secondary form.



Each procedure may use only one secondary file. However, you may access more than two files by "chaining" to one or more other procedures. This is explained in the section "Procedure Chaining" in Chapter 14.

NOTE:DO NOT designate your primary file as the secondary file in a procedure. The two must be different files.

If you are working with one file only, you do not need to name a secondary file.

In order to use the procedure illustrated here, you must have the VersaForm XL program disk and your primary and secondary files all on-line at the same time. If you're using a hard disk system, you'll have no problem. With a diskette system, if your primary and secondary files are on the same disk, then two disk drives are sufficient; otherwise, you must have three drives (or a "RAM-disk").

THE PROCEDURE

1. From the Main Menu, choose #8, Enter or Change a Procedure. VersaForm XL will ask for the drive containing your primary file.
2. Enter the name of the primary file (i.e. SAMPLE) when requested, and press .
3. From the blank procedure screen, press  to enter a new procedure. Changing a procedure is described in Chapter 14.

VersaForm XL will display a menu of procedure types (Figure 13-5).

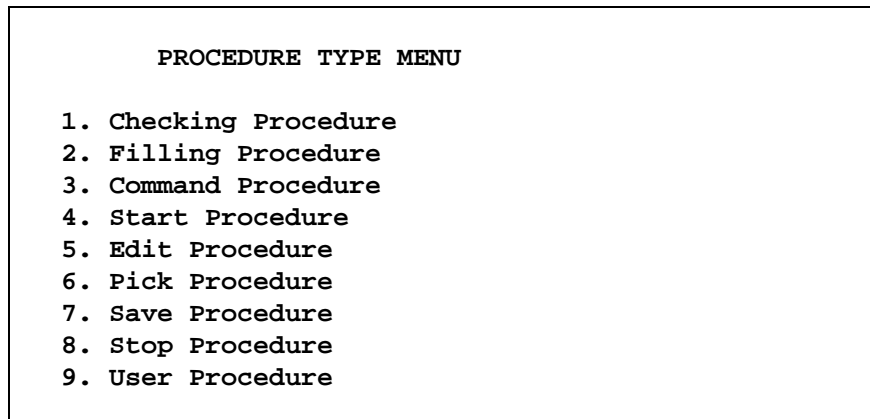


Figure 13-5

Only one procedure of each type may be chosen for a file, except for USER procedures. All the procedure types shown in Figure 13-5 are fully explained in Chapter 14.

Option #1--a *Checking procedure--specifies that the procedure will be executed every time you Validate, after VersaForm XL checks for errors, but before automatic filling or calculation occurs. That's the option to choose for this procedure, as you want to have data automatically filled into each column line on the Invoice form.

4. Choose #1, Checking. VersaForm XL will fill in the Procedure Name on the Procedure Instructions form (see Figure 13-6).
5. If you want to have a secondary file for this procedure, type a ? in the Secondary File field and validate. You'll be asked for the location of the disk and the name of the file. In this example, the secondary file is named INVENTORY. Both the primary and secondary files should be on-line at this time.

You may delay naming the secondary file until the procedure is executed. This is discussed later in this chapter.

Now you'll be asked if you want VersaForm XL to locate the correct form in the secondary file automatically.

Do you want automatic lookup? (Y/N) N

6. Answer Y. Since automatic lookup is done so often, VersaForm XL provides an especially easy way to set it up. (Another way to locate the form is by writing your own instruction statements. This is explained in Chapter 14.)

When you press Y, you'll see a blank form from your primary file, and this message:

Press RETURN to choose item that supplies lookup value for
B.PARTNO.

Here B indicates the secondary file and PARTNO is the key item for forms in that file.

The item that supplies the value for locating the correct form is STOCK#. In other words, you want VersaForm XL to use the value in STOCK# on your Invoice form to find the Inventory form that has that same value in its key item, PARTNO.

7. Move the cursor to STOCK#, then press X.

Figure 13-6 shows the information that VersaForm XL has been given thus far about the two files.

```

PROCEDURE INSTRUCTIONS

Procedure Name *CHECKING.....
Secondary File INVENTORY.....
Key-from1 STOCK#....      Key-from2 .....

L# .....Procedure.....
01 .....

```

Figure 13-6

The single items at the top of the form in Figure 13-6 tell VersaForm XL what the procedure name is, when to execute it (at validation, because it's a *CHECKING procedure), the secondary file you're using (INVENTORY), and where to get the key for the INVENTORY file (from STOCK#).

PROCEDURE NAMES

Each procedure has a name, either assigned by VersaForm XL or given by you, according to the type of procedure you select (Figure 13-5). VersaForm XL assigns the names to all but USER procedures. In this case, the name *CHECKING was automatically assigned.

In this example, at validation VersaForm XL will 1) check your data entries for accuracy; then 2) execute the procedure, which will cause it to look up data in the Inventory file and enter DESCRIPTION and PRICE on the Invoice form, and then 3) perform automatic filling according to the options chosen when the form was designed. Here, VersaForm XL would use the value in PRICE, which was just transferred to that item by your procedure, to calculate and fill in the AMOUNT (QTY X PRICE) on the Invoice.

Any other automatic filling, such as computing a column total, also takes place after a CHECKING procedure runs.

SECONDARY FILES

If information is to be looked up from another file, its name will be entered here. Remember that it must be a different file from the primary file.

You may delay choosing from among several possible secondary files until the procedure runs. Instead of filling in the name of the secondary file on the Procedure Instructions form, type a question mark (?). At execution, VersaForm XL will ask you to name the file. You may also follow the question mark with the name of a file. For example:

?CUSTOMER or ?B:CUSTOMER

In this case, VersaForm XL would prompt the operator for a secondary file name at execution, and use CUSTOMER as a default.

These options enable you to use different secondary files at different times.


KEY-FROM1 AND KEY-FROM2

These are the items on your PRIMARY form that contain the values VersaForm XL will use as key values to look up the correct form in your secondary file. If the forms in the secondary file have two-part key items, then two values must be supplied. In this example, we have told VersaForm XL to use the value in STOCK# on the invoice form to locate the correct inventory form (the one with the matching value in its key item, PARTNO).

THE PROCEDURE

In the column headed Procedure, you'll write a sequence of statements which make up the procedure. See, for example, Figure 13-7. The usual VersaForm XL commands are available as you fill in your Procedure Instructions form.

- VALIDATE provides on-screen help for filling in procedure and file name.
- SAVE saves your procedure for later use. Before doing so, VersaForm XL translates it (compiles it) into an executable form. If any error is detected, you'll see an error message and you'll be able to rewrite the procedure. If no errors are found, VersaForm XL will save both the translated (code) and untranslated (source) versions of the procedure on your primary file.
- You can interrupt a procedure compilation by pressing Escape.
- DISPLAY may be used to display either your primary or secondary form, so you can verify item names and their spelling.
- FIRST, NEXT, and GET are used to retrieve procedures.

- INDEX lists procedures by their key item, Procedure Name. You can retrieve a procedure you want to change directly from the index.
- INSERT LINE and DELETE LINE do what their names imply.
- CLEAR, PRINT and REMOVE serve their usual functions.
- PgUp and PgDn (Page Up and Page Down) are used to scroll up or down, since only 16 lines of a procedure are visible at one time.
- When you press , you'll see the menu of commands.

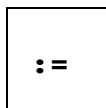
PROCEDURE STATEMENTS

The procedure we're writing in this example moves values from one form to another. In this case, the values from PARTNAME and STDPRICE on the INVENTORY form (Figure 13-2) will be moved to DESCRIPTION and PRICE on the INVOICE form (Figure 13-3).

```
L# .....Procedure.....
01 DESCRIPTION := PARTNAME;
02 PRICE := STDPRICE;
```

Figure 13-7


The two statements in Figure 13-7 are called "assignment" statements because they assign the value of one item to another. Assignment is represented by the following symbol:



These statements tell VersaForm XL that:

- * DESCRIPTION is to be assigned the value from PARTNAME.
- * PRICE is to be assigned the value from STDPRICE.

Enter each statement by typing the item to be filled in, followed by the assignment symbol (a colon followed by an equal sign), followed by the item that contains the data. Every complete statement must be followed by a semicolon (;).

After completing each statement line, press  to continue on the next line. You do not need to validate after entering each line. When you are finished, SAVE your procedure.

When you write procedure statements,

- Each statement must be followed by a semicolon (;).
- More than one statement may occupy a line.
- Uppercase or lowercase letters or a combination may be used.
- Spaces within statements are ignored. Therefore, each of the lines below are equally correct:

```
01 DESCRIPTION := PARTNAME; PRICE := STDPRICE ; OR
01 DESCRIPTION:=PARTNAME; PRICE:=STDPRICE;
```

Using Form Items in a Procedure

IDENTIFYING FORM ITEMS WITH THE SAME NAME

What happens if an item name on the secondary form has the same name as one on the primary form? When there is a possibility of confusion, identify the primary form with "A." and the secondary form with "B."

For example, if the Inventory form had an item called PRICE instead of STDPRICE, you'd make the assignment statement read:

```

A.PRICE := B.PRICE ;
  |       |
Primary Secondary
```

FORM ITEMS WITH SPACES OR SYMBOLS


What if an item name has a space, hyphen, colon, or other symbol in it (e.g., PART NAME, or STD-PRICE, or Price/Each)? VersaForm XL is flexible about spaces or symbols in item names on forms, but in a procedure these could cause confusion (e.g., STD-PRICE could be interpreted as STD minus PRICE).

To avoid this problem, when an item name includes a space or a symbol, enclose it in exclamation marks (!): !STD-PRICE! or !Address:! or !PART NAME! If the item needs to be additionally identified by A. or B., as explained above, the letter is NOT enclosed: B.!STD-PRICE!

Exception: Two symbols are acceptable in form item names. They are "_" (underscore) and "#". Therefore, item names such as STD_PRICE and STOCK# would not have to be enclosed in exclamation marks.

READING AND WRITING ASCII FILES.

ASCII text files may be read into or written from a procedure. To do this, use the Print command. It keeps the file name and uses it as a default when writing. To read a file:

1. Clear the form.
2. Type your procedure name in the Procedure Name field.
3. Place the cursor on column line 1.
4. Press  (Print).
5. Choose the Read option.
6. Enter the file name.

Since the procedure editing area is only 77 characters wide, lines longer than 77 characters are automatically split.

To write the file, simply press  again, and choose the Write option.

This facility permits you to edit ASCII files (such as AUTOEXEC.BAT) while in the VersaForm XL Procedure entry mode, as well as to import and export text files.

Refer to Chapter 14 under the heading INCLUDE on how to use the Include statement to compile a procedure in an ASCII file.


Chapter 14

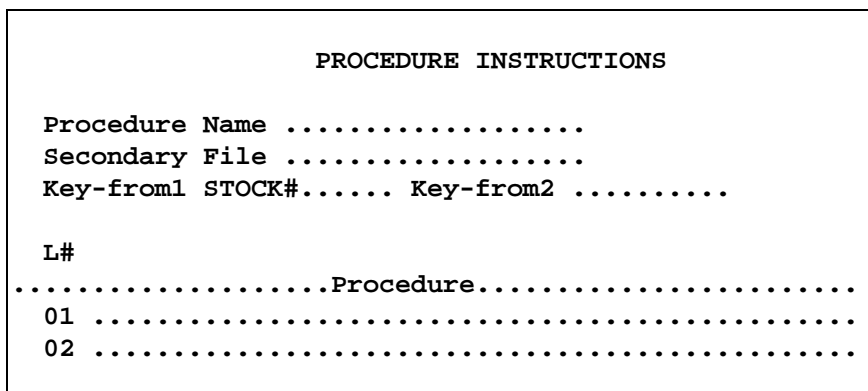
WRITING PROCEDURES

Chapter 13 introduced a simple procedure. This chapter describes more advanced uses of VersaForm XL procedures and discusses the language used to build procedures.

It isn't necessary to learn all the terms and options described in this manual before starting to use procedures. Begin with simple operations, then build on your knowledge and experience.

Changing A Procedure Or Writing A New One

After you choose "Enter or Change a Procedure" from the Main Menu and select your file, a blank Procedure Instructions form will be displayed (Figure 14-1). You may change or remove procedures just as you would any other form in your VersaForm XL files. You can even copy a procedure (on the same file) by changing the Procedure Name, then hit  to SAVE the procedure.





```
PROCEDURE INSTRUCTIONS

Procedure Name .....
Secondary File .....
Key-from1 STOCK#..... Key-from2 .....

L#
.....Procedure.....
01 .....
02 .....
```

Figure 14-1

When entering a procedure, you can compile all the procedures in a file. This is useful when making major changes in an application. Use  .

To write a new procedure, enter the procedure name - either one of the * procedures shown in Figure 14-2 or a user procedure where you provide the procedure name. Then you'll be asked to supply the information for filling in the remaining items (see "Entering the Procedure" in chapter 13).

Procedure Types

Figure 14-2 shows the types of procedures you may write. The type of procedure determines when it is executed. Otherwise, there are few differences between them.



PROCEDURE TYPES		
Type	Name	When Executed
CHECKING	*CHECKING	at validation, after checking but before automatic filling, calculation
EDIT	*EDIT	when a file is switched to
FILLING	*FILLING	at validation, after automatic filling
PICK	*PICK	when   is pressed
START	*START	at Filing startup
SAVE	*SAVE	when form is SAVED
STOP	*STOP	at Filing termination
COMMAND	*COMMAND	when certain commands are used
USER	(any name)	when directly invoked

Figure 14-2

A file may have only one procedure of each type, except for USER procedures.

CHECKING PROCEDURES

A *CHECKING procedure runs during validation, after all data checking has been done but before any automatic filling occurs.

When a *CHECKING procedure changes the value of an item on the primary form, it triggers automatic filling just as if the user had typed in a new value. For example, look at the following line:

L#	QTY	STOCK#	DESCRIPTION	PRICE	AMOUNT.
01	30	A44	Elec Drill	20.00	600.00

Suppose a *CHECKING procedure changes the value in PRICE to \$15.00. VersaForm XL will recalculate the AMOUNT during automatic filling, just as it would if the \$15.00 had been keyed in.

L#	QTY	STOCK#	DESCRIPTION	PRICE	AMOUNT.
01	30	A44	Elec Drill	15.00	450.00

WARNING: A changed value like the one shown in this example triggers automatic filling **ONLY** on the primary form.

If you were transferring data to a secondary form, and the procedure changed a similar value, your procedure would have to contain statements for recalculating the amount on that form.

RESTRICTIONS on checking procedures

These restrictions apply not just to *CHECKING procedures, but to any procedures CHAINED to by a *CHECKING procedure.

The value of A.L# cannot be changed during data checking. The item A.L#, the current line number, is either zero (if no lines were changed) or the line number of the column item(s) that were keyed into by the user just before the validation command was issued.

Only items on the current line of the column area can be modified.


You cannot add or insert lines to a form during checking.

The PAGE procedure will not change the currently displayed page on the primary form.

Saving the primary form during checking will not save any changes that your procedure has made to the form, since validation has not yet been completed.

These restrictions do not apply to secondary files, nor do they apply to procedures chained to by a *FILLING procedure. To get around them, use a *FILLING procedure instead of a *CHECKING.

EDIT PROCEDURES



The *EDIT procedure for a file is executed every time the user starts FILING on or switches to the file. It gives the programmer a way to perform setup activity before the user uses a file. For instance, if the user switched to a new file using , the *EDIT procedure for that file would be executed before editing on that file began.

FILLING PROCEDURES

A *FILLING procedure also runs during validation, but after both checking and automatic filling have occurred. This type of procedure can be used to perform additional calculations or a file lookup after automatic filling has taken place.

NOTE: If the procedure changes a value which contributes to a column total, the procedure **MUST** include statements to do its own recalculation of that total, since Validation's calculation phase has already taken place.

PICK PROCEDURES

"Pick Lists" are popup lists that let the user make a choice. They are implemented both by the system and by procedures. If a file has a *PICK procedure, it will run whenever the user types  , or double-clicks the mouse. This will occur wherever the cursor is at the time. Thus, the first thing a *PICK procedure must do is determine where the cursor is, and so whether to respond.

Procedures can turn the pick list indicator (the down arrow) on for any field, using SETFLDINFO.

If the *PICK procedure returns FALSE (0), the "validation needed" indicator will be turned on, causing validation to occur the next time it is requested. (Normally, the system regards data changed by a procedure as not requiring validation.) If it returns TRUE (1), validation will not be required. If it returns -1, the system's pick list (consisting of the items on a list check) will be allowed to function.

START PROCEDURES

This procedure runs when you begin FILING operations, before the first form is displayed.

Variables in a *START procedure are global--that is, they retain any value given to them for the duration of a FILING session. For example, you could set up a "running counter" to keep track of the number of forms processed during a FILING session.

NOTE: If you add global variables to a *START procedure, all procedures that use *any* global variables must be recompiled.

A secondary file may not be used with a *START procedure. However a *START procedure can CHAIN to a user procedure which in turn can access a secondary file. It is possible to perform a variety of functions at the beginning of the filing session. Some of these are demonstrated in the file of sample procedures (See Chapter 15).

When you switch from one file to another by using the DISPLAY command, the *START procedure for that file will be run unless the file was already open. When you close that file, the *STOP procedure will run. If you CANCEL in a *START procedure, the system will return to the main menu. **NOTE:** This is a change from earlier versions; CANCEL in a *START procedure used to terminate the program.

SAVE PROCEDURES

This procedure runs when you use the SAVE command during a FILING session. It executes *in place of* the usual SAVE command. If validation is needed, it will occur and any checking or filling procedures will be executed before the *SAVE procedure runs. Any error detected during validation cancels the *SAVE procedure.

This procedure *does not* automatically save a form. To do that, you must write a "SAVEFORM (A);" statement in either the *SAVE procedure or in a USER procedure that it chains to. (Procedure Chaining is explained later in this chapter.)

Because you have control over when your form is saved, you can do operations both before and after saving.

STOP PROCEDURES

This procedure runs at the end of a FILING session, when you execute the command EXIT.

COMMAND PROCEDURES

*COMMAND procedures allow you to take control whenever the operator executes one of a number of commands.

When the operator gives a command, the *COMMAND procedure is invoked before the command itself. In addition to the normal capabilities of a procedure the *COMMAND procedure can decide whether to allow the given command to be executed. The command will be allowed to proceed only if the procedure returns a value of TRUE via the built-in RETURN procedure.

When a form is fetched (i. e., read), the *COMMAND procedure is invoked after the form has been read as well as before the command itself, (so you can examine it in the procedure). In this case, RETURN (TRUE) tells the system to keep the form; RETURN (FALSE) will clear the form.

You can use the LASTCOMMAND built-in to find out what the command that the user gave (via either the command menu or the function keys) was, or if the invocation of the *COMMAND procedure is the result of a fetch.

*COMMAND procedures also are invoked whenever a new form is fetched (i.e., read) from the file to become the current form. This often occurs as the result of a GET, NEXT, or similar command, but it can also occur as the result of an INDEX or SEARCH operation.

The commands that invoke a *COMMAND procedure are:

Command

LASTCOMMAND Yields

Help	?
Space	SP
Index	I
Remove	R
Exit	Q
Clear	CL
Search	SE
Print	PR
Delete line	D
Get	G
First	F
Last	L
Next	N
Back	B
Save	SA
SaveContinue	SC
Fetch	FE

Example: This command procedure will prevent the operator from using the REMOVE command.

```
begin
if lastcommand = 'R' then
  begin
  bellmsg ('Illegal Command');
  return (false); {don't execute command}
  end
else
  return (true); {let the command execute}
end;
```

USER PROCEDURES

USER procedures may be executed at any time. They may be run by chaining from other procedures or by using the EXecute command. (See Procedure Chaining.) Only USER procedures have names assigned by you. A name must begin with a letter, A-Z.

A procedure isn't loaded until it's needed, so there's a delay the first time it's executed. Thereafter, unless forced out by another procedure, it remains in memory, so the next time it's used there's no delay in execution.

Up to 10 procedures may be implemented to be activated by "hot keys". They must be named 'User Cmd 1', 'User Cmd 2', and so on. Hot keys for these procedures may be defined in SYSSETUP.VFS, using the procedure name in column 1. Aside from the hot key connection, these procedures are the same as any other user procedures.

Elements of a Procedure (Procedure Syntax)

Procedure statements are made up of identifiers, literals, reserved words, special symbols such as [,], (,), and (+, -, *, /, etc.). By combining these, you can form expressions, comparisons, assignment statements, and compound statements.

IDENTIFIERS

Identifiers can be item names on forms, variables, or constants. (Variables and constants are discussed in subsequent paragraphs.)

An identifier must begin with a letter, which may be followed only by one or more letters, or digits (0 thru 9), or the special characters _ (underscore) or "#". It may contain up to 20 characters. UpperCase and LowerCase letters may be used interchangeably.

Exception: Names of form items containing blanks, hyphens, or other symbols may be used as identifiers so long as they are enclosed in exclamation marks. For example:

!STD-PRICE! or !price/each! or !PART NAME! or !Address:!

FORM ID (NOTATION: AorB)

Identifies the primary form (A) or the secondary form (B).

FORM ITEMS (NOTATION: FORMITEM)

A form item is an identifier that refers to an item on your form. For example, these statements include four form items:

```
DESCRIPTION := PARTNAME ;  
A.PRICE := B.STDPRICE ;
```

COLUMN ITEMS IN PROCEDURES

A form has two kinds of items, or fields: single and column. A column may contain up to 99 values. In a procedure, you may refer to a specific column line. For example, to refer to the 10th line of the column item AMOUNT on a primary form, you may write:

```
AMOUNT [ 10 ]
```

The line number is enclosed in brackets and preceded by the column name.

VersaForm XL uses the special identifier "L#" to refer to the current line. Except in a checking procedure, you may change its value. On a primary form, the default L# is whatever line you're entering when the procedure runs.

The value of B.L#, the current line on a secondary form, is initially zero. It changes value only when you assign a valid line number to it. Remember, therefore, to assign a number to B.L# if you want to refer to a column item on the secondary form. The value of B.L# is re-set to 0 if another secondary file is accessed.

NOTE: If you refer to a column item without explicitly using a line number, the current value of L# is used.

Examples of L# use are:

L# := 1 ;	Set current line to 1 on the primary form.
B.L# := K ;	Set current line to K on the secondary form (B). If K is 5, then B.L# will now be 5.
B.AMOUNT := 20.55 ;	If B.L# is 5, B.AMOUNT [5] is assigned the value 20.55. B.AMOUNT is the AMOUNT column on the secondary form. The L# will be whatever value you've assigned it in the procedure.
AMOUNT := AMOUNT [2] ;	The current line in the AMOUNT column on the primary form is assigned a value from line 2 in the AMOUNT column.
AMOUNT := AMOUNT [L#-1] ;	The current line in the AMOUNT column on the primary form is assigned the value from AMOUNT on the previous line.

NOTE: When the primary and secondary forms both have column lines, you must qualify L# with the letter A or B, as shown in the second and third examples above.

COMMENTS

Comments are notes which you may include freely in a procedure; they are for your reference only, and no action is taken on them. They are set in braces { } or parentheses (* *). For example:

```
DESCRIPTION := PARTNAME ; (*fills in description on Invoice*)
PRICE := STDPRICE ; {enters price from Inventory}
```

Whichever symbol you choose to begin your comment must also be used to close it.

LITERALS

Literals are explicit values; they can be numbers, dates or strings of characters. You may use a literal in your procedure either directly in a statement or by making it a constant (constants are explained below).

Numbers must start with a digit or a leading plus (+) or minus (-) sign, and can contain up to 13 digits and 8 decimal places. Some valid examples are:

```
21 -321.50 1234567890123.12345678 0.159
```

Note that .327 is NOT a valid number: Since a digit must precede the decimal point, the number must be written as 0.327.

Dates and character strings must be enclosed in single or double quotes, and can include leading or trailing blanks as you want them to print:

```
: 'abcdef' or "+ tax" or "you're late"
```

```
Dates: '2/25/84' or "12/31/99"
```

Character strings may consist of up to 80 characters and must be contained on one line.

CONSTANTS

You may designate (declare) an identifier as a constant at the beginning of a procedure (and ONLY at the beginning). Thereafter, the name of that constant, rather than its value, may be used in statements. A value that is used repeatedly in a procedure will be easier to change when necessary if it has been made a constant.

In the following example, two constants, LIMIT and FIRSDATE, are declared:

```
CONST LIMIT=4 ; FIRSDATE = '6/30/80' ;
-----
/      | \      |
abbreviation identifier value identifier value
for "CONSTANT"
```

In a declaration, the abbreviation for constant (CONST) is always used. It appears once only, regardless of how many constants you're declaring, and precedes the first identifier. Each identifier is followed by an equal sign, the value you're giving it, and a semicolon.

In the example above, if you wanted to change the value for LIMIT from 4 to 5, you would only need to change it in the declaration.

VARIABLES

Variables are declared just after constants. They retain their values only during the time that the procedure that uses them is running. (Exception: see Global Variables, below.) In the example that follows, the variables AVGPRICE and TODAY are declared:

VAR AVGPRICE; TODAY ;		

abbreviation	identifiers	
for "VARIABLE"		

The abbreviation for variable, VAR, is always used in a declaration. It appears only once, before the first identifier, regardless of the number of variables being declared in this procedure. Each identifier is followed by the required semicolon.

The value of a variable can be a number, character string (up to 80 characters), or date. VersaForm XL will automatically handle different types of data when doing computations or moving data between variables and items on forms. After declaring the variables, you MUST signal the beginning of your procedure with the word BEGIN. For example:

VAR AVGPRICE; TODAY;
BEGIN
.....

GLOBAL VARIABLES

In general, each time a procedure runs, the variables and constants in it lose any previous value they may have had. However, you may keep a variable throughout a filing session by declaring it in a *START procedure, which runs when FILING is first entered. A variable thus declared automatically becomes "global," and VersaForm XL won't subsequently erase it.



The following example illustrates the declaration of global variables in a *START procedure to establish a continuously increasing serial number:

VAR SERIAL# ;
BEGIN
SERIAL# := 1000 ; ...

Here the variable SERIAL# is global. SERIAL# will be assigned an initial value of 1000 when this *START procedure runs, and could be used later in another

procedure (e.g., you could increase it by 1 each time you used it) without re-declaring it.

CAUTION: If you later modify a *START procedure by removing, renaming, or even rearranging the declaration of constants and/or variables, you must correct any references to them that occur in other procedures.

To do that, first retrieve each procedure by using the INDEX or GET command, and change the Procedure Instructions form to make it consistent with the modified *START procedure. Then have VersaForm XL recompile (translate into an executable form) each changed procedure by using the SAVE command, or use   to recompile all procedures on the file.

Note that even if you only rearrange declarations in a *START procedure, you should re-SAVE other procedures which refer to them.

This does not need to be done if you are only changing the assignment of initial values, as in the third line of the above example.

RESERVED WORDS

These words play special roles in procedures, and may not be used as identifiers. If a form item name is the same as a reserved word, you must use exclamation marks(!) around the form item name.

AND	DO	MOD	THEN	PADDING
BEGIN	ELSE	NOT	UNTIL	ROUNDING
CONST	END	OR	VAR	CLOSE
DIV	IF	REPEAT	WHILE	A,B (form ID)

The following words are reserved for future implementation. Do not use these names as variables in your procedures.

ERROR#	OPEN
EXIT	PROCEDURE
FUNCTION	IOMESSAGE
LOAD	UNLOAD

Building Procedure Statements

BUILT-IN PROCEDURES AND FUNCTIONS

Certain often-used operations can be performed by built-in routines--procedures and functions. You can call them by using the procedure or function name, and giving the values you want it to work with (these are called parameters).

A Procedure Example

The built-in procedure `DELETELINE` deletes a line from a form. For example, you may use it by writing

```
DELETELINE ( A , 5 ) ;
```

to delete line 5 from the primary form; or

```
DELETELINE ( B , LINENUM ) ;
```

to delete from the secondary form whichever line is indicated by the variable `LINENUM`. `5` and `LINENUM` are the parameters. The procedure call (illustrated above) forms a complete statement.

A Function Example

Functions are procedures that return a result. When you supply a function with values or items (arguments), it uses them to compute a result which it returns to you as its value.

For example, `COLTOTAL` is a function that computes the total of a column. Thus,

```
COLTOTAL ( B . COST )
```

computes the total of the column called `COST` on the secondary form. To use it, you might write

```
A . TOTALCOST := COLTOTAL ( B . COST ) ;
```

Here the item `TOTALCOST` on the primary form would be assigned the value of the computed total of the `COST` item on the secondary form.

Note that functions can be used in assignment statements, while procedures cannot. Functions do not form complete statements by themselves; they must be used in other statements, such as the assignment statement above.

A list of built-in procedures and functions is presented in Chapter 15.

Expressions

Expressions are computations to be performed that result in a value. The value of the expression can then be assigned to a variable or item, or compared to another expression, or passed to a built-in procedure or function. Examples of expressions are:

```
a) PRICE [1] + 2.50
b) ( COST + 4.2 ) * ( TOTAL - a.lastamt )
c) coltotal (b.amount) + tax
```

The above expressions imply that the value computed will be a number, but you can also use values like dates and character strings in expressions. The resulting value depends upon what operations are performed.

Expressions are built using identifiers, operators, parentheses, and functions. In addition to the usual operators:

```
+ (add)          * (multiply)
- (subtract)     / (divide)
```

there are three other operators DIV, MOD, and &.

DIV and MOD are operators that perform integer (whole number) arithmetic. DIV is like divide, but the result is always a whole number, not a decimal. MOD provides the remainder after division. For example:

11 DIV 4 has a value of 2

11 MOD 4 has a value of 3

If the numbers being operated on are not whole numbers, they are truncated to whole numbers before the operation of MOD or DIV is performed. For example, 3.5 would become 3 before being used in DIV or MOD.

String Expressions

The “&” operator allows you to combine (concatenate) character strings into longer strings. Strings can be concatenated to a total length of 80 characters. Characters beyond that will be ignored.

Here is an example of concatenation using the & operator:

If A.TOTAL is 11.50 and A.DUE DATE is 12/15/85, then the concatenation

```
'Please pay $' & A.TOTAL &
' by the following date: ' & A.DUE DATE
```

would appear as:

```
Please pay $11.50 by the following date: 2/15/95
```

To use an arithmetic expression within a string expression, surround it with parenthesis. Example:

```
'It has been ' & (VDATE - A.PAYDATE)
& ' days since your last payment.'
```

In the above example the expression (VDATE - A.PAYDATE) is computed before the string expression is composed. Note that character strings must be enclosed in single or double quotation marks.

When a VersaForm XL procedure gets a value from an item on a form, all leading and trailing blanks are removed. It is possible to preserve these blanks by using the "SET (PADDING)" statement. See the section on "AUTOMATIC PADDING."

Technical Note: Order of Evaluation

When evaluating an expression, VersaForm XL performs operations in this order:

First, it performs the operations

$*$, $/$, DIV, MOD, AND

Next, it performs

$+$, $-$, OR, &

Finally, it evaluates

$=$, $>=$, $<=$, $<$, $>$, $<>$

For example, since multiplication is done first,

$2 + 3 * 5$ will yield 17.

If you want the addition done first, write

$(2+3) * 5$ which will yield 25.

COMPUTATION EXCEPTIONS

VersaForm XL automatically recognizes what type of data it is using when doing a computation. It will handle addition and subtraction between dates and numbers (see also Date Arithmetic, below).

Here are some exceptional situations:

- * When VersaForm XL encounters a (a character string) during addition or subtraction, it treats the non-numeric as zero and proceeds with the rest of the calculation.

- * If a non-numeric value is encountered during multiplication, VersaForm XL treats it as 1, which allows the rest of the calculation to proceed as if the non-numeric was ignored.
- * If a procedure divides a number by zero, the result will be the largest number possible in VersaForm XL.

Date Arithmetic: VersaForm XL procedures can automatically add and subtract dates and numbers, when meaningful. For example:

DATE1 - DATE2	Yields the difference in days.
DATE1 + number	These yield a date, treating the number as a number of days.
number + DATE1	
DATE1 - number	

All other combinations involving dates are undefined.

Dates between 1/1/100 and 12/31/9999 may be used in date arithmetic.

ASSIGNMENT STATEMENT

Assignment is the operation of transferring a value from an item, or variable, or the result of an expression, to a form item or variable. It is stated in the following way:

ABC	:=	XYZ	;
identifier		expression	

The symbol "!=" is the assignment operator. Note the required semicolon at the end of the statement.

In an assignment statement, the form item or variable to the left of the assignment symbol receives the value of the item or expression on the right. Here, ABC will receive the value of the expression XYZ.

Moving Data Onto Forms

When moving data to an item on a form, VersaForm XL will justify it according to the "Justify (L/R/#)" specification made for that item when the form was designed.

If a character string value is too long to fit in an item, it will be (cut off) on the right. A numeric value will be rounded as necessary (down to 0 decimal places) to make it fit.

Sometimes a date or rounded number may still be too large to fit in an item; in that case, the value "?" will be used. A warning message will be displayed, and a "beep" will sound, but the procedure will continue to run.

Comparisons

Comparisons are expressions that can be either TRUE or FALSE. Symbols used in comparisons are:

=	<=
<	>=
>	<>

The use of these symbols is illustrated in the following examples:

a) COST = 4
b) coltotal (B.AMOUNT) > 400
c) (COST=4) or (PRICE>10)
d) (STATE <> 'NY') and (INCOME > 10000)

Comparisons are most commonly used to make a decision using an "IF" statement:

IF STDPRICE > 4 THEN PRICE := STDPRICE ;
--

If the value in STDPRICE is greater than 4, then that value is to be assigned to PRICE.

Compound Comparisons

Compound comparisons are built by surrounding each sub-expression with parentheses. The logical operators AND, OR, and NOT are used between sub-expressions. Examples c) and d) above are compound comparisons.

COMPOUND STATEMENTS

Compound statements allow you to construct complex statements from simple ones.

You may form compound statements in these ways:

BEGIN and END

a) BEGIN statement1 ; statement2 ; ... END ;

Example:

```
BEGIN
B.L# := LASTLINE (B) + 1 ;
INSERTLINE (B,B.L#) ;
B.INV# := A.INV# ; B.TDATE := A.DATE ;
B.QTY := A.QTY ;
B.TOTALQTY := COLTOTAL (B.QTY) ;
SAVEFORM (B) ;
IF NOT IOERROR THEN A.POSTED := 'Y' ;
END ;
```

This compound statement is made up of eight other statements, each ending with the required semicolon. Notice that when the word **BEGIN** is used, it must be paired with an **END**.

IF Statements

b) IF condition THEN statement1;

Example:

```
If A.DATE <= TEMPDATE THEN DELETELINE (A,A.L#) ;
```

If the date on the primary form is earlier than or equal to the value held in **TEMPDATE**, then delete the current line on that form.

c) IF condition THEN statement1 ELSE statement2 ;

Example:

```
IF IOERROR THEN PROMPT ( "ERROR" )
ELSE PRICE := STDPRICE ;
```

If the previous I/O operation was not successful and produced an **IOERROR**, then the user should see the prompt "ERROR"; otherwise, **PRICE** should be assigned the value in **STDPRICE**.

IMPORTANT: Note that **NO** punctuation separates the **THEN** and **ELSE** statements. *There should never be a semicolon directly before an **ELSE**.*

The statements called for in an **IF** statement may themselves be **IF** statements (as well as other types). This allows you to form compounds of the pattern:

```

IF TEMP > 100 THEN
  PROMPT ( 'TOO HOT' )
ELSE IF TEMP < 50 THEN
  PROMPT ( 'TOO COLD' )
ELSE PROMPT ( 'JUST RIGHT' );

```

In this case, the ELSE clause of the first statement is itself an IF statement.

Anywhere a simple statement can be used, a compound statement can be used instead. This allows you to form "nested" statements such as:

```

IF X>Y THEN
  BEGIN
    B.NAME := A.NAME ;
    IF X > 10 THEN
      CANCEL
    ELSE
      PROMPT ( 'Continue?' );
    IF NOT YESNO THEN X := 11 ;
  END ;

```

Here, lines 2 - 5 play the role of a single statement in the IF...THEN of line 1.

REPEAT and WHILE

The REPEAT and WHILE statements provide a way of performing "loops" -- groups of statements that are executed over and over.

d) REPEAT statement1 ; statement2 ;statementN ;
UNTIL condition;

Example:

```

L# := LASTLINE (A);
REPEAT
  IF L# >0 THEN
    IF A.DATE <= TEMPDATE THEN
      DELETEDLINE (A,L#);
  L# := L# - 1;
UNTIL L# = 0;

```

Each line on the primary form is to be compared. If the date is earlier than or equal to the variable TEMPDATE, the line should be removed. This action is to repeat, using the next previous line, until there are no lines left to process.

NOTE: In a REPEAT loop, the statements ALWAYS execute at least once; whether they actually repeat, depends on when the UNTIL condition becomes true.

All the statements between REPEAT and UNTIL are executed each time.

e) WHILE condition DO statement1 ;

Example:

```
While LASTLINE (A) > L# DO  
  BEGIN ..... END ;
```

As long as column lines remain on the primary form, that is, the number of lines is greater than the current line (the value in L#), the statement which follows should be executed.

NOTE: A WHILE statement differs from a REPEAT statement in that the statement may not execute at all, depending upon whether or not the WHILE condition is true.

This is because the WHILE statement tests the condition before executing the statement that follows, whereas a REPEAT tests the condition afterward. Notice too that a WHILE compound executes only one statement. If more are needed, they should be grouped into one statement by BEGIN and END, as shown in the following example:

```
01 WHILE X>Y DO  
02   BEGIN  
03     X := X-1 ;  
04     PRICE [X] := COST [Y] ;  
05   END ;
```

In this case, lines 2 through 5 make up one (compound) statement. Lines 3 and 4 are executed as long as X is greater than Y.

It is important, when writing a loop, to make sure that the loop does not go on forever, as the following example would:

```
I := 9; WHILE I > 0 DO PROMPT ("HELLO") ;
```

Some statement in the loop must change the variables so that the loop condition will eventually fail, and the loop end. For example, to fix the previous example so that the message "HELLO" would print only nine times, you could write:

```
I := 9  
WHILE I > 0 DO  
  BEGIN  
    PROMPT ("HELLO") ;  
    I := I - 1 ;  
  END ;
```

Procedure Chaining

Chaining allows several VersaForm XL procedures to execute in sequence, thus permitting you to control which procedures execute and when.

NOTE: You may only chain to a USER procedure.

Suppose an invoice form needs to look up items in both a customer file and an inventory file, but only when certain items on the invoice have been changed by the user.

The appropriate time for this to happen is during validation, after data checking but before automatic data filling and calculation. A CHECKING procedure might then contain the following statements:



```
IF CHANGED (ACCOUNT#) THEN CHAIN ( 'GET CUSTOMER' );
IF CHANGED ( ITEM# ) THEN BEGIN
    PROMPT ( 'Lookup part? ' );
    IF YESNO THEN CHAIN ( 'GET PART#' ) ;
END ;
```

The first statement will cause the USER procedure GET CUSTOMER to run when the user enters a new account number.

The second statement will cause the USER procedure GET PART# to run if the user keyed in a new ITEM# and responded **Y** to the prompt.

If both user procedures are chained, they will be run in turn, **after** the CHECKING procedure has been executed. Each procedure may access a different secondary file.

All chaining is done on a first-in first-out basis. If a procedure that was "chained to" also does a chain, that request will be met after all pending requests are satisfied. If procedure A chains to procedures B and C, and B chains to procedure D, the order of execution will be ABCD.

After exiting a chain of procedures, the last secondary file is closed unless it is on display (this is a change from earlier releases). This means that   no longer goes to the last secondary file automatically and unsaved changes in the last secondary file are lost.

Calling Procedures

Procedures can call other procedures. When one procedure calls another, the called procedure executes immediately, and when it ends control returns to the caller. A single variable can be passed to the called procedure, which is retrieved

by using the GETPARAM function. A single value can be returned (using RETURN) to the caller, since the built-in routine CALL is a function.

The called procedure does not have to be on the same file as the caller. It can be on the secondary file, or a VOPENed file. If you call a procedure on another file, be sure that the file is open! (Secondary files are automatically opened by the system.)

The called procedure can itself have secondary files and other files. Item names (e.g., A.CUSTOMER, B.ADDRESS) in the called procedure refer to the same files as they would normally. Global variables in the called procedure refer to *START variables in the CALLED procedure's file. If the CALLED procedure is on a file other than the original primary file, the *START procedure for that file won't have been run, and therefore the globals for that file won't have been initialized. If you want to initialize them, you must do so explicitly.

Warning: Procedures are not recursive. That is, a procedure should not CALL itself, or a procedure that calls it, etc.

CHAINS from a called procedure occur only at the end of the top level calling procedure.

For example, if **SAMPLE** is the original file, and procedure X on **SAMPLE** chains to **Y** (on **SAMPLE**) and then calls Z on **INVENTORY**, Z will run before X finishes, and of course before Y. If Z refers to an item called A.CUSTOMER, that denotes an item on **INVENTORY**, not **SAMPLE**. Likewise if Z refers to a global variable, that would be a global established by **INVENTORY**'s *START, not **SAMPLE**'s. This would be true whether **INVENTORY**'s *START procedure had run or not.

CANCELLING PROCEDURES

You may want to cancel further procedure execution under certain circumstances.

For example, when looking up a PART# on an inventory form from ITEM# on an invoice, you would want to stop validation if the matching PART# was not in the inventory file. The user procedure GET PART# would have the following statements in it to handle this situation:

```
IF A.ITEM# <> B.PART# THEN
  BEGIN
    PROMPT ( 'Item not found' ); BELL; CANCEL;
  END
ELSE
  BEGIN
    . . .
  END ;
```

If the PART# cannot be found, a message appears, the bell sounds, and the procedure is cancelled. Any other procedure that might run as the result of a CHAIN command and, in this case, any further validation, is also cancelled. The operator will see the error message "Item not found" at the bottom of the screen.

AUTOMATIC ROUNDING AND NUMERIC PRECISION

When VersaForm XL performs a calculation, the number of decimal places in the result can be up to 8 digits of precision. Less precision will be used if possible.

You may alter the way precision is determined by using the following statement:

```
SET ( ROUNDING ) ;
```

When the ROUNDING flag has been set, all expressions computed in procedures will have an internal accuracy of up to 8 digits and then be rounded to the number of decimal places determined by the maximum precision of the components of the expression. To turn off automatic rounding, use the statement:

```
CLEAR ( ROUNDING ) ;
```

NOTE: At the start of a filing session, ROUNDING is always cleared. If you set ROUNDING in any procedure, it will stay set for all procedures until you clear it.

Normally you need to be concerned with precision only when performing multiplication or division. When two numbers are multiplied the precision of the result is greater than each of the components. Example:

1.01 * 1.01 has a value of 1.0201

If ROUNDING is set the number will be displayed as "1.02" because each of the components has a display precision of 2 decimal places. Division can also result in greater precision.

Examples of ROUNDING set and cleared:

EXPRESSION	ROUNDING SET	ROUNDING CLEARED
5.8 * 2.6	15.1	15.08
2 / 3	1	.66666666
2.000 / 3	.667	.66666666
0.0000 + 2 / 3	.6667	.66666666
ROUND (2/3, 5)	.66667	.66667

There are three ways to control the precision of a result.

1. If the result is to be assigned to an item on the form, change the "JUSTIFY (L/R/#)" field in the item's checking and filling specifications to the number (0 through 9) of decimal places to be displayed for the item.
2. With ROUNDING set use a constant (e.g 0.000) in an arithmetic expression that has as many decimal places as you wish the result to have. The result will have that display precision unless some other component of the expression has more precision.
3. Use the ROUND function to control the number of decimal places displayed. The ROUND function not only changes the display precision of the value but also rounds the value as well.

Example: ROUND (2/3, 4) has a value of 0.6667

AUTOMATIC PADDING

When a form item is used in an expression or an expression is assigned to an item, all leading and trailing blanks are removed. To leave these blanks unchanged, use the following statement in a procedure:

```
SET ( PADDING ) ;
```

To turn this feature off and allow the blanks to be removed, use the statement:

```
CLEAR ( PADDING ) ;
```

At the start of a filing session PADDING is cleared. If a procedure sets PADDING it will stay set until explicitly cleared.

Automatic padding is useful when you wish to export data in a column format or write a procedure to print a custom report or form. You may also use the PAD

function. See the sample procedure "EXPORT DATA" in the VersaForm XL sample procedure file PROCFILE to see how the PADDING flag is used.

READING OR IMPORTING ASCII FILES

You may read data from an ASCII file into a variable or form item one line at a time with the READ procedure. This file may have been created with a word processor or other program.

An ASCII file is no more than a sequence of characters separated by "carriage return" and "line feed" characters whenever a new line is wanted. The TEXTINPUT procedure names the file that will be opened for input. Lines of text may be read from this file using the READ procedure.

The READ procedure will read up to 80 characters or until a "carriage return" character is encountered. You will know that a "carriage return" has been found if the line read is less than 80 characters in length. Example:

TEXTINPUT ('B:MEMO.TXT') ;	{this opens a file called MEMO.TXT on Drive B}
READ (DATA) ;	{a line of text is read from MEMO.TXT into the variable DATA}
TEXTINPUT (CLOSE) ;	{this closes the file MEMO.TXT so that another file can be opened}

It is now possible to assign the value of DATA to an item on your form. You can also use the STR function to extract parts of DATA to be assigned to several items. See the sample procedure "IMPORT DATA" (on PROCFILE) on how to do this.

Since a variable can hold, at most, 80 characters, the READ procedure will only read at most 80 characters at a time. If a line is 80 or more characters in length, it will take more than one READ to process that line.

Lines of any length may be handled by doing several READs. By testing the length of DATA you can determine when the end of the line has been reached. If you READ a line and its length is 80, you must perform at least one more READ to reach the end of that line. If the length of DATA on the next READ is zero, you then know that the line just read was exactly 80 characters long. The following example shows how to read and faithfully reproduce a text file on the printer:

```
TEXTINPUT ( 'B:MEMO.TXT' );
REPEAT
  READ ( DATA );
  IF NOT IOERROR THEN
    BEGIN
      PRINT ( DATA );
      IF LENGTH ( DATA ) < 80 THEN
        PRINT (CR); {print carriage return}
      END ;
    UNTIL IOERROR ;
TEXTINPUT (CLOSE); {remember to close the file}
```

Note that in the above example a "new line" character (CR) is printed only when the length of DATA is 79 characters or less. It generates both a "carriage return" and "line feed" when printed. The function IOERROR will be TRUE when the READ procedure tries to read beyond the last line of MEMO.TXT or if there is an error reading the file. IOERROR will also be TRUE if you forgot to open the TEXTINPUT file.

The VREADCH function will read a single character from the currently opened textinput file. The following example will read 1 character from COM1 and write the value on the screen at the current cursor location:

```
textinput ('COM1');
while not ioerror do
  put (vreadch);
textinput (close);
```

WRITING ASCII FILES

You can write data to a text file by first using the PRINTFILE procedure to create the file and the PRINT procedure or the PRINTFORM procedure to write the data. This can be useful for exporting data for use by other programs such as spreadsheets or word processors.

The PRINTFILE procedure redirects output from a PRINT statement, normally going to the printer, to a file on disk. It also redirects output from a PRINTFORM statement in a procedure or the "PRINT" command issued from the command menu. At the start of the filing session, output from the above statements is sent to the printer.

If the file named in the PRINTFILE statement already exists, its current contents are erased. Example:

```
PRINTFILE ( 'B:OUTPUT.TXT' ) ;
      {this creates a file on drive B, erasing
      any previous file by that name.  Output
      from the following statements is now sent
      to the file OUTPUT.TXT }

PRINT ( 'Hello' & CR ) ;
PRINTFORM ( A, 'INVFMT', '' );

PRINTFILE (CLOSE);
{PRINT statements will now send data to the printer}
```

To append to an existing file, use the EXT_PRINTFILE built-in (see Chapter 15).

NOTE: The current print file stays open until a procedure statement closes it. If the output file is never closed, any PRINT or PRINTFORM statement in any procedures executed later during the same filing session will continue to write its data to the output file. At the end of the filing session, the print file is automatically closed.

I/O ERROR HANDLING

The IOERROR function tells whether or not the most recent I/O (input or output operation) was successful. Its value is reset to TRUE or FALSE each time a procedure performs an operation that transfers data between memory and a disk or printer.

The IOERROR function will be set to TRUE if an attempt is made to read past the end of a file. It will also be set to TRUE when a form is not found, or a form cannot be read because of bad data. When writing data, the IOERROR function will be set to TRUE if the file or disk is full or the file was not open for output.

When opening a text file, the IOERROR function will be set to TRUE if the file does not exist (in the case of a TEXTINPUT file) or the file name or drive designator is invalid.

The IOERROR function may be tested (e.g. IF IOERROR THEN ...) as many times as you wish and will not change its value until the next I/O routine is performed. Here are the built-in procedures that reset the value of IOERROR:

```
Form I/O: FIRSTFORM, LASTFORM, GETFORM, SAVEFORM,
          NEXTFORM, BACKFORM, REMOVEFORM
Text I/O: TEXTINPUT, PRINTFILE, PRINT, READ
```

NOTE: In the statement

```
FIRSTFORM (A);  
IF IOERROR THEN PRINT ('FIRSTFORM had an error' );  
IF IOERROR THEN PRINT ('PRINT had an error.');
```

the value of IOERROR is changed by the first PRINT statement, so the second test refers to the result of the PRINT statement, not the FIRSTFORM.

MORE THAN TWO FILES

You may have up to 10 VersaForm files open in a procedure. The primary and secondary files behave as described above. To open more than two files, two built-in routines, VOPEN and VCLOSE, are used.

Files opened with VOPEN can be manipulated with any function that uses a file as an argument. Fields in these files cannot, however, be accessed in the normal way within the VersaForm XL language. You must use ASSIGN and RETRIEVE to access these fields.

For instance, if the field TOTAL is in a secondary file, you can write

```
X := B.TOTAL;
```

But if it is in a file opened with VOPEN, say D, you cannot say

```
X := D.TOTAL;
```

instead, you must say

```
X := RETRIEVE (D, 'TOTAL', 0);
```

Example:

```
var lookupfile;  
...  
lookupfile := vopen ('lookup.vf');  
                                     {opens the lookup file}  
if lookupfile <> 0 then  
begin { put cust name in the key field, "key" }  
assign (lookupfile, 'key',0, a.customername);  
getform (lookupfile);  
if not ioerror then  
begin  
    {get the data}  
    B.name := retrieve (lookupfile,'name',0);  
    B.addr := retrieve (lookupfile,'address1',0);  
end;  
if vclose (lookupfile) then prompt ('File closed');  
...
```

Be sure to VCLOSE files that you have VOPENed. VersaForm won't do it for you.

To use ENTERITEM on a third file you need to declare a variable and set it equal to the name of the field you want to fill in. Then use that variable as a parameter in the ENTERITEM statement. For example:

```
prompt ('Calculate interest (Y/N)');
Z:= 'Interest?';
if enteritem (stmtfile, Z, 0) then;
```

where:

stmtfile is the name of the variable assigned to the third file,
 Z is the variable to hold the field name "Interest" on the third file
 0 indicates that the field is a single item field

To use INSERTLINE on a third file, you need to declare a variable and set it equal to the line number, before executing an INSERTLINE in a procedure.

For example:

```
var cline;    {line number for the third file}
...
cline := 1;
INSERTLINE (stmtfile, cline);
```

WINDOWING ROUTINES

Four simple routines, INFOMSG, BELLMSG, YESNOMSG, and ANSWERMSG display a message in a pop-up box and wait for the user to answer or press ENTER.

For examples, see the routine descriptions in Chapter 15.

For more general window usage, functions are provided to create and delete a window of arbitrary size and color.

The function VOPEN_WIN (x, y, width, height, color, title) opens a window of the given width and height with its upper left corner at (x,y). When a window is open, GOTOXY, GET, PUT, and CLEARSCREEN operate within the window. Only the last window opened is active.

The total size of all windows open at once is limited to approximately 1800 characters.

The function VCLOSE_WIN (handle) closes the window.

The windowing functions use a single number for the attributes, which is the same as the VersaForm setup uses. This leaves the SETATTR function as the only one which uses separate arguments for foreground and background. To be consistent, a new version of SETATTR has been provided, which uses the single number form. It is called SET_ATTRIB.

Example:

```
SET_ATTRIB (31);
```

sets the screen attributes to white on blue.

The argumentless functions `NORMAL_VID` and `REVERSE_VID` will give you the current video attributes (which, of course, depend on the installation.) Thus, to display a window in the current reverse video attributes, you would write:

```
VOPEN_WIN (....., REVERSE_VID, ...);
```

INCLUDE


Procedures may include source statements from external files. This gives you a way of using a standard editor or word processor that will save files in ASCII format (one such is `VFEDIT`, a text editor included on your `VersaForm` directory) on your procedures.

To include a set of procedure instructions written with an external text or, do the following:

1. Create a new procedure or get the old procedure you want to update.
2. In line 1, or wherever you want to insert the instructions you have written, enter the following statement by itself at the beginning of the line:

```
{ $I filename }
```

Where `filename` is the name of the ASCII file containing the procedure statements to be included. **Be sure to include the curly brackets.** ({ })

3. Press  to compile the procedure and save it.

Any text following the comment bracket on the same line is ignored.

FILE HANDLING

When opening a file that is already open, the caller gets the existing file. The file is not re-opened. This is implemented by means of an open count. When closing a file, it is actually closed only if the open count is 0.

`VOPENed` files stay open until explicitly closed.

Data buffers for files without details are only as big as the single item portion of the file. A screen buffer for a file is not allocated until it is needed. This means that files opened with `VOPEN` that don't have details are fairly light memory users. A similar advantage may be gained on files with details if the number of details is limited.

PROCEDURE HANDLING

At end of procedure chain, all procedures on open files are removed from memory, except for procedures on the the original file. All validation information on open files is removed from memory, except for the original file.

At the end of any procedure not on the original file, all procedures on that file not currently in use are removed from memory. When memory is short, procedures not in use may be removed from memory at any time.

Errors and Exceptions

If your form contains an item that has the same name as a function, constant, or variable, you must qualify the item name with a FORM ID. Use either A.ITEMNAME, if it's on the primary form, or B.ITEMNAME, if it's on the secondary form. If this isn't done, you may only get a warning when you save your procedure, but when it runs, you won't be referencing a form item.

For example, VersaForm XL has a built-in function called VDATE, which yields the current date. If an item on your primary form is also called VDATE, then if you wrote this statement:

```
SHIPDATE := VDATE ;
```

you would only get a warning about VDATE when your procedure is saved; but later, when your procedure executes, SHIPDATE would get today's date instead of the value of the form item VDATE.

If, on the other hand, your statement was:

```
VDATE := SHIPDATE ;
```

you would get an error when you saved your procedure because VersaForm XL assumes you are trying to assign a value to a built-in function, which is not allowed.

VersaForm XL determines what an identifier refers to by following these rules:

1. A qualified form item name (e.g., B.CUSTOMER) is searched for on the appropriate form. If the item isn't found, a warning is issued. For example:

```
WARNING - A.CUSTOMER not found on form. Continue? (Y/N)
```

See "The Continue? Message" below.

2. If the identifier is found on both forms, a warning is given but VersaForm XL assumes you mean the primary form:


```
WARNING-DATE is on both forms, primary assumed. Continue? (Y/N)
```

- If an item name on either form has the same name as a built-in procedure or function, variable or constant, an appropriate warning is given. One example of such a conflict has been given above (VDATE). For another, the statement "VAR ADDRESS" would cause an error message if it was also a form item:

```
WARNING-ADDRESS variable has same name as form item. Continue? (Y/N)
```

- When a variable or constant is given, an error message appears if it duplicates another variable or constant (local or global) or a standard function. For example:

```
ERROR - Identifier already global:  
              or  
ERROR - Identifier is a reserved word:
```

- For an unqualified identifier (i.e., a form item not identified by A or B), VersaForm XL first determines if the identifier has been declared as a function, variable, or constant. If it has not, first the primary form, then the secondary form (if available) is searched. If the item isn't found a warning is issued:

```
WARNING - CUSTOMER not found on form. Continue? (Y/N)
```

THE "CONTINUE MESSAGE"

When you SAVE a procedure, you may see a WARNING message followed by a "Continue?" prompt. If you respond Y, VersaForm XL will continue to check other items in the procedure and then SAVE it.

Later, when you enter the FILING program and this procedure is loaded, VersaForm XL will once again check to see if the items are on the form(s). You'll see the same message again. This time, a Y response tells VersaForm XL that it's okay to run the procedure.

If you reply **N** to the "Continue?" prompt when attempting to SAVE a procedure, the cursor will be returned to the last line on the procedure instructions form and you'll have a chance to fix the error. If the error occurred in an included ASCII file, then you'll have to fix the error using VFEDIT or your own word processor. If a line number is given, make a note of it before you switch to your editor so you can locate it more quickly.

A response of **N** to "Continue?" during the FILING session will usually return you to the Main Menu.

When a procedure runs, if it makes reference to an item that has not been found, the item will return a "null value" (a blank). If a value was assigned to a missing item, the assignment operation is ignored.

Chapter 15

BUILT-IN PROCEDURES AND FUNCTIONS

NOTATION

As explained earlier, you can call built-in procedures and functions by name, giving them the values (parameters) you want them to work with.

The notations defined below are used to identify the language elements which replace them in procedure statements. For instance:

Somefunction (AorB, EX1, formitem) means that Somefunction has 3 parameters, the first of which is either A or B, the second can be any expression, and the third of which must be an item from a form.

AorB	Identification for either the primary form (A) or secondary form (B).
FILE	Either the primary form (A) or secondary form (B), or a file handle opened by VOPEN.
EX, EX1, EX2	Expressions.
FORMITEM	An item on a form. May be qualified by A or B, as A.QTY or B.PRICE.
FORMTYPE	A VersaForm form type--these are: VFDATA, VFORMAT, VREPORT, VPRINTCTL, VCOPYCTL, VPRINTFMT, VPROCSRC, VPROCOBJ, VMISC, VCHECKS, VRANGES, VLISTCHECK, VTABLE, VCOMP, VFMT, VACCUM, VPFMTSRC, VPFMTOBJ.
ITEM	Either a form item or a variable.
L#	Current line number. You can set L# only to values between 1 and LASTLINE+1. For example: A.L# := 1 sets the primary form current line number to 1.
N	A line number.

Built-in Routines

MANIPULATING FORMS

Procedures	Action
CLOSE_COPYFORM	Removes transfer list from memory
COPYCOLS (File, File)	Copies column lines
COPYFORM (File, File)	Copies a form between files
DISPLAY (File)	Displays the form
PAGE (File, EX)	Displays form starting at Line#
PgDn (File)	Page Forward
PgUp (File)	Page Backward
PRINTFORM (File, EX1, EX2)	Prints form with format
TEST_PRINTFORM (File, EX1)	Test print form with format
VDISPLAY (File, EX1, EX2)	Displays form at coordinates
Functions	Action
SETFLDINFO (File, EX1, EX2, EX3)	Sets field attribute
SETUP_COPYFORM (File, File, File)	Sets up for COPYFORM
SETUP_PRINTFORM (File, EX1)	Sets up print format before PRINTFORM
VNOKEY	Sets whether data can be entered in field
VPICK	Sets PICKLIST field attribute
 These procedures perform a VersaForm command:	
GETFORM (File)	REMOVEFORM (File)
SAVEFORM (File)	CLEARFORM (File)
NEXTFORM (File)	BACKFORM (File)
FIRSTFORM (File)	LASTFORM (File)
ERASEFORM (File)	

Manipulating Column Lines

Procedures and functions that deal with column lines on a form include:

Procedures	Action
CLEARCOL (File)	Removes all column lines
COLSORT (File, fld1, ord1, fld2, ord2, fld3, ord3)	Sorts column area of form
DELETELINE (File, N)	Deletes column line
INSERTLINE (File, N)	Inserts a blank line

Functions	Action
COLTOTAL (FORMITEM)	Returns column total
DEPTH (File)	Maximum lines displayed
FINDLINE (FORMITEM, EX)	Finds particular line
LASTLINE (File)	Number of column lines
MAXLINE (File)	Maximum lines on form
SEARCHLINE (File, FORMITEM, EX1, EX2)	Finds particular line
VCOLTOTAL (File, FORMITEM)	Returns column total

ENTERING AND TRANSFERING DATA

Procedures	Action
ASSIGN (File, name, N, item)	Assigns a value
BELLMSG (ex-msg)	Popup msg with bell
CLEARSCREEN	Clears the screen
ERRORMSG (ex-msg)	Popup error message
EXT_PRINTFILE (ex-filename)	Extends text file
FGET (str, code, kval)	Gets a response
GET (item)	User enters item
GETCH (ch, code, keyvalue)	Reads KB, no echo
GETXY (item-x, item-y)	Gets cursor location
GOTOXY (ex-x, ex-y)	Moves the cursor to x,y
INFOMSG (ex-msg)	Popup message
PRINT (ex)	Writes to printer or file
PRINTFILE (ex)	Opens text output file
PROMPT (ex)	Writes message to screen
PUT (ex)	Writes to the screen
READ (item)	Reads text file line
RESTATTR	Restores colors
SETATTR (foregnd, backgnd)	Sets screen colors
SET_ATTRIB (attributes)	Sets screen colors
TEXTINPUT (ex)	Opens text input file
VOUTPUT (ex)	Writes to printer or text file
VREADCH	Reads text file character
Functions	Action
ANSWERMSG (ex-msg, ex-default)	Popup msg with answer
ASK_FILENAME (ex, ex, ex, ex)	Ask for filename
CURSORITEM (name, n)	Where is cursor?
ENTERITEM (File, formitem, n)	Enter a data item
FIELDTYPE (File, name)	Locates a field
GOTOITEM (File, formitem, ex)	Moves the cursor
KEYSTRUCK	TRUE if key pressed
NORMAL_VID	Normal video attributes
PRINT_LABELS (file, file, ex)	Prints labels
RETRIEVE (File, name, n)	Gets a value
REVERSE_VID	Reverse video attributes
RUN_REPORT (File, Report name)	Runs a report
SAVENEDED (File)	Has form changed?
USER_DID_ESCAPE	Did user escape?
YESNO	Waits for a 'Y' or 'N'
YESNOMSG (ex-msg, ex-Y/N)	Popup, waits for 'Y' or 'N'

MANIPULATING STRINGS

Functions	Action
DUP (ex, length)	Duplicate a string
FORMAT (format, ex)	Change string format
JUSTIFY (ex, length, type)	Return a justified string
LASTPOSN (ex1, ex2)	Position of last ex1 in ex2
LENGTH (ex)	Current string length
LTRIM (ex)	Removes leading blanks
PAD (ex, length)	Pad with trailing blanks
POS (ex1, ex2)	Position of ex1 within ex2
POSN (ex1, ex2)	Non-case-sensitive position
RPAD (ex, length)	Pad with leading blanks
RTRIM (ex)	Removes trailing blanks
SELECT (ex, ex1, ex2)	Uses ex to choose ex1 or ex2
SIZE (item)	Maximum item length
STR (ex, start, length)	Return a sub-string
VSIZE (File, ex)	Maximum item length

APPLICATION MAINTENANCE FUNCTIONS

These functions can operate on data forms, reports, print formats, procedures, etc.

Function	Action
VCOLTOTAL (file, column)	Column Total
VCOMPARE (file, file, ftype, key1, key2, n, neq)	Compare Forms
VCOPY (file, file, ftype, key1, key2, repl)	Copy Forms
VCOUNT (file, ftype, KEY, n-item)	Count Forms
VDELETE (file, ftype, KEY, n-item)	Delete Forms
VRENAME (file, ftype, key1, key2, n-item)	Rename Forms

LOCKING AND TRANSACTION

Procedures	Actions
COMMIT	Commits the transaction
ROLLBACK	Performs a rollback
SET/CLEAR/POP (locking)	Turns all locking on or off
SET/CLEAR/POP (auto_lock)	Turns auto locking on/off
SET/CLEAR/POP (rollback_on)	Turns rollback on or off
UNLOCKFILE (File)	Unlocks a file
UNLOCKFORM (File)	Unlocks current form

Functions	Actions
LOCKFILE (File, exclusive/shared)	Requests file lock
LOCKFORM (File, exclusive/shared)	Requests form lock

WINDOWS AND PICK LISTS

Functions	Action
APPENDLIST (list handle, list entry)	Adds entry to list
DISPLAY_HELP (file, field, H)	Displays context sensitive help
MENU (ex, ex, ex, item, item, item)	Displays menu, user choice
PICKFIELD (file, field)	Picks a field from a form
PICKFILE (win handle, start point)	Picks item from text file in window
PICKINDEX (file, index name, win handle, start point)	Picks form from index list
PICKLIST (win handle, list handle item)	Picks item from previously created list
VCLOSE_LIST (ex-list handle)	Closes list
VCLOSE_WIN (ex-window handle)	Closes window
VOPEN_LIST	Opens list
VOPEN_WIN (x, y, wid, ht, attr, title)	Opens window

PROGRAM CONTROL

Procedures	Action
CANCEL	Ends procedure, returns control to user
CHAIN (Procedure name)	Runs another procedure
RETURN (ex)	Ends procedure, returns ex
VEXIT	Exits to the Main Menu
VQUIT	Returns to DOS
Functions	Action
CALL (File, EX1, EX2)	Calls one procedure from another
DOS_EXEC (EX1)	DOS will execute the command
EDIT (File, window)	Allows entry in indicated file
GETPARAM	Gets passed parameter in called procedure

OTHER PROCEDURES AND FUNCTIONS

Procedures	Action
BELL	Rings bell or beeper
DISPLAYFILE	Displays text file
SET/CLEAR/POP (auto_prompt)	Controls automatic prompting
SET/CLEAR/POP (padding)	Controls blank padding of expression
SET/CLEAR/POP (rounding)	Controls rounding in calculation
SET/CLEAR/POP (silent)	Controls user's ability to escape
SET/CLEAR/POP (user_may_escape)	Controls user's ability to escape
Functions	Action
CHANGED (FORMITEM)	True if item changed
CHR (EX)	Returns character value
DATAPATH	Returns default path
FORMATSEQUAL (F1, F2)	True if forms are the same
IOERROR	True if I/O error occurred
LASTCOMMAND	Last command requested
MAX (EX1, EX2)	Larger of EX1 and EX2
MIN (EX1, EX2)	Smaller of EX1 and EX2
ORD (ex)	Returns ASCII value
PREVENT_DELETE (File)	Are deletions prevented?
PRINT_CTL_STR	Returns printer control str
PROGRAMPATH	Returns VF path of program files
ROUND (EX, N)	Round EX to N decimals
SYSTEM_COLOR (ex)	System color attribute depending on ex
TEST (Flag)	Returns value depending on test result
VCLOSE (EX)	Close handle EX
VDATE	Current date
VDAY (EX)	Day number
VMONTH (EX)	Month number
VOPEN (EX)	Open file EX, return handle
VTIME	Current time
VUSER	User ID
VYEAR (EX)	Year number
TRUE, FALSE, FORMFEED, CR	Return special values

Alphabetical Listing of Built-in Routines

ANSWERMSG (msg, default answer) Function.

Displays a message in a pop-up box and waits for the user to enter a reply.

Example:

```
var inp;
inp := ANSWERMSG ('Enter the name: ', 'MYFILE');
```

The default reply is "MYFILE". The reply will be assigned to the variable "inp".

APPENDLIST (ex-list handle, ex-list entry) Function.

Adds the list entry to the list. Returns a handle for the list entry; returns 0 if the entry was not added to the list. At most 127 entries can be added to a list. For an example, see PICKLIST.

ASK_FILENAME (msg, default path, default name, existing file?) Function.

Requests a file name in the standard pop-up box and waits for the user to enter a reply. The last parameter should be TRUE if you want the user to enter the name of an existing file, and FALSE if you want the name of a new one.

Example:

```
var inp;
inp :=
  Ask_filename ('For the next file:', '', '', TRUE);
```

The reply will be assigned to the variable "inp".

ASSIGN (File, ex-item name, N, ex-value) Procedure.

Finds item name in File and gives it the value. Item name can be a string or a variable. If item name is a field name it is the contents of that field that is denoted, not the field itself.

Example:

```
var x:
begin
x := 'Customer';
Assign (A, x, 0, 'Robinson');
...
```

Places the value Robinson in the field called Customer on form A (assuming that Customer is there and it isn't a column item). This is useful when you don't know at the time you are writing the procedure which field will be accessed.

AUTOPROMPT Flag.

Used to disable or enable the autoprompt feature. Use SET (AUTOPROMPT) to turn on auto prompting, use CLEAR (AUTOPROMPT) to turn it off.

BACKFORM (File) Procedure.

Example: See FILING COMMAND PROCEDURES, below.

BELL Procedure.

Sounds bell or beeper.

Example:

```
BELL; PROMPT ('WARNING') ;
```

Sounds the beep and prints the message "WARNING" on the screen.

BELLMSG (msg) Procedure.

Displays a message in a pop-up box, sounds the bell, and waits for the user to press ENTER.

Example:

```
BELLMSG ('I/O Error');
```

CALL (File, ex-procedure name, ex-parameter) Function.

Calls one procedure from another. The called procedure may be on the same file as the caller, or on another. If it is on another file, that file must already have been opened, either as a secondary file or with VOPEN. The name of the called procedure must be given in a variable or item, or in quotes. The parameter is available to the called procedure via GETPARAM. The value returned by the CALL function is the value returned by the procedure. The called procedure is executed before the next statement in the calling procedure.

Example:

```
returned_value := CALL (a, 'subroutine', parameter);
```

CANCEL Procedure.

Immediately leaves current procedure and returns control to the operator. All procedures that have been CHAINED (see below) are ignored.

Example:

```

IF IOERROR THEN
BEGIN
PROMPT ( 'I/O ERROR' ) ;
CANCEL ;
END ;

```

Prints the message ('I/O ERROR') on the screen and stops the procedure if an I/O error has occurred.

CHAIN (ex-Procedure name); Procedure.

Adds the procedure whose name is given to the list of procedures to be run when this one finishes. The name of the procedure chained to (FILLCUST) must be in quotes if it is given literally, like any other string.

Example: The USER procedure FILLCUST is chained only if the item CUSTNUMBER has been changed.

```

IF CHANGED (CUSTNUMBER) THEN
CHAIN ( 'FILLCUST' ) ;

```

CHANGED (formitem) Function.

Returns TRUE if form item has been modified since the last validation. Used mostly in CHECKING procedures, since they run before validation is complete.

Example: Recomputes AMOUNT, but only if the operator didn't key anything into AMOUNT.

```

IF NOT CHANGED (AMOUNT) THEN
AMOUNT := QUANTITY * PRICE ;

```

This routine can also be used to prevent unnecessary procedure invocations.

Example: The USER procedure FILLCUST will be run only if the item CUSTNUMBER has been changed. This saves using the procedure FILLCUST when it isn't needed.

```

IF CHANGED (CUSTNUMBER) THEN
CHAIN ( 'FILLCUST' ) ;

```

CHR (ex) Function.

Returns the character that corresponds to the value of EX when EX has a value in 0...255.

Example: CHR (65) is the character 'A'. The CHR function can be used to send a control sequence to your printer to change the font:

```

PRINT (CHR (15)) ;

```

Using this statement will put most IBM PC printers into compressed mode. By contrast, the statement PRINT (15) would simply print the two characters "15" on the printer.

CLEAR (flag) Procedure.

Clear an internal flag. See SET for a list.

Example:

```
CLEAR (ROUNDING) ;
```

CLEARCOL (File) Procedure.

Removes all column lines from a form.

Example:

```
CLEARCOL (B) ;
```

Removes all existing column lines from the current form on the secondary file.

CLEARFORM (File) Procedure.

Example: See FILING COMMAND PROCEDURES, below.

CLEARSCREEN Procedure.

Clears the screen.

Example:

```
CLEARSCREEN ;
```

CLOSE_COPYFORM Procedure.

Removes the transfer list from memory and returns copyform to its normal function. See SETUP_COPYFORM for an example.

COLSORT (File, ex-fieldname1, ex-order1, ex-fieldname2, ex-order2, ex-fieldname3, ex-order3) Procedure.

Sorts the column area of a form in either ascending or descending order. The order argument can be either '+' for ascending order or '-' for descending order.

Example:

```
colsort (a, 'Date', '+', 'Qty', '-', ' ', '');  
display (a);  
saveform (a);
```

This would sort the column area of the primary form. The date column would be in ascending order and if two lines have the same date then the line with the highest qty would come first.

COLTOTAL (formitem) Function.

Returns the total of a column item. *See also VCOLTOTAL*

Example:

```
A.TOTALCOST := COLTOTAL (A.AMOUNT) ;
```

The total of the AMOUNT column is placed in TOTALCOST.

COMMIT Procedure.

Multi-user version only. Commits the current transaction.

Example:

```
Commit ;
```

COPYCOLS (File, File) Procedure.

Copies all the column lines (and only the column lines) from the first form to the second form. Note that the two files must have the same form design.

Example:

```
Copycols (a, b) ;
```

COPYFORM (File, File) Procedure.

Copies the entire form from primary to secondary or vice versa. File formats must have the same single item length and column line length for this to work. No other checking is done.

Example: Copy selected forms from secondary to primary. Remove copied forms on the secondary file.

```
FIRSTFORM (B) ;
REPEAT
  IF B.TOTAL >1000 THEN {if total > 1000 we will}
  BEGIN {copy the form from B to A}
    COPYFORM (B,A) ;
    SAVEFORM (A) ;
    IF NOT IOERROR THEN REMOVEFORM (B) ;
  END ;
NEXTFORM (B) ;
UNTIL IOERROR ; {or end of file}
{ioerror signals end of file}
```

NOTE: The built-in COPYFORM can be used to perform a copy by name, or to copy only certain fields, or both. To do this you use an auxiliary file, to control the action of COPYFORM. The auxiliary file must have the same fields as the TRANSFER file that is shipped with the system,

CR Function.

Returns the ASCII carriage return character (13) which will cause a carriage return on the printer or console. VersaForm also adds a line feed character, positioning the printer for the next line.

Example: See FORMFEED.

CURSORITEM (item-itemname, item-detailnum) Function.

Returns a value of 0 if the cursor is not in a field; 1 if it is in the field name portion of the field; 2 if it is in the data area. If the returned value is not 0 (indicating that the cursor is indeed in a field, then the first parameter will contain the name of the item. Further, if the returned value is 2, the second parameter will enable you to distinguish between a single item and a detail. It will contain 0 if the item is a single item and the line number (always > 0) if the item is a detail line.

Example: (a "help" function)

```
var name, number;

If cursoritem (name, number) <> 0 then
  if name = 'salary' then
    prompt ('Enter the employee's base salary');
```

This command is useful when used with a ***COMMAND** procedure to create context sensitive help.

DATAPATH Function.

Returns the current value of the default pathname for data files.

Example: If datapath is currently 'C:\data' then

```
displayfile (datapath & '\mymenu');
```

will display the contents of C:\data\mymenu

DELETEDLINE (File, N) Procedure.

Deletes column line N. **WARNING:** Column totals are NOT recomputed. You must include the specific instructions to recompute them in your procedure.

Example:

```
DELETEDLINE (A, 3) ;
A.TOTAL := COLTOTAL (A.PRICE) ;
```

Line 3 is deleted from the primary form. The column total is recomputed by the second statement to keep the total correct.

DEPTH (File) Function.

Returns the number of column lines that can be seen on the display.
DEPTH will be 0 if the form has no column lines.

Example: The DEPTH function is useful when it is necessary to determine when to "page forward" the column area. If a procedure is processing column lines the following statement determines when to display the next page:

```
IF L# MOD DEPTH (A)=1 THEN  
PAGE (A,L#);
```

DISPLAY (File) Procedure.

Displays the form starting with the first column line for that form.

Example:

```
DISPLAY (B) ;
```

This statement will display the secondary form starting at line 1. If DISPLAY is used during *CHECKING, the currently modified line is displayed. The PAGE procedure should be used instead to control which lines to display.

DISPLAYFILE (value) Procedure.

Displays the text file whose name is given as the parameter on the screen.
Useful for menus, help screens, etc.

Example:

```
clearscreen;  
displayfile ('helpfile.txt');  
repeat until keystruck;
```

This command is useful for quickly displaying screens stored as ASCII text files.

DISPLAY_HELP (filename-exp, fieldname-exp, H-exp) Procedure.

Displays context-sensitive help, which it reads from the file VF.HLP. The key on VF.HLP has two parts: filename and fieldname. If H is TRUE, the help text from VF.HLP is displayed; if H is FALSE, the prompt text is displayed.

Example:

```
Display_help ('sample', 'customer', true);
```


This example displays the help for the customer field on the sample file (if it exists).

DOS_EXEC (command line - exp) Function.

DOS_EXEC will execute the given command as if it had been typed in at the DOS command line and then return to VersaForm. It will swap VersaForm into XMS or Expanded memory or create a swap file on disk to free almost all memory. If the DOS_EXEC function is successful it will return 0; otherwise it will return one of the following error codes:

1. Unable to shrink DOS memory block size. This indicates an error in the DOS Memory Control Block chain. This is unlikely.
2. Unable to save the program to either extended memory, expanded memory, or disk. The new program was not executed.
3. Unable to execute the new program.

Example:

```
begin
if dos_exec ('Copy sample.txt new.txt') <> 0
then
  prompt ('Unable to copy file');
end;
```

These statements would perform a DOS copy of the file named SAMPLE.TXT to a file named NEW.TXT and then return to VersaForm.

DUP (ex1, ex2) Function.

Returns the value of EX1 replicated out to a length of EX2 characters.

Example:

```
PRINT (DUP (CR,5) & DUP ('*',60));
```

This example prints 5 carriage returns and then a row of 60 asterisks.

EDIT (File, window) Function.

Allows the operator to enter data in the indicated file, optionally in a window. The file must be open. If the window parameter is not zero, then it must be the handle of an open window. The file may not be file A.

The operator may end the editing session with either the SAVE or EXIT commands. If SAVE, then EDIT will return TRUE; if EXIT, EDIT will return FALSE. It is up to the caller to actually save the form. EDIT does not do it.

WARNING: When EDIT ends, it does not re-display the original form. The programmer must remember to do this.

NOTE: When using the EDIT function the *CHECKING, *EDIT, *FILLING, and *PICK procedures of the edited file are executed. When entering data under EDIT, the filing commands that change to another form (get, next, etc.) may not be used. The *START, *STOP, *SAVE, and *COMMAND procedures are not executed. CHAINs and CALLs are handled normally.

Example: Enter data on form B. There is no window, so B is displayed full screen.

```
if yesnmsg ('Enter new data now? (Y/N ', 'Y')
then
  begin
    if edit (b, 0) then saveform (b);
    display (a);
  end;
```

ENTERITEM (File, formitem, exp) Function.

Moves the cursor to the formitem. If the formitem is a detail item, exp is the line number and must be between 0 and the depth of the form. If the location is legal and visible, then the operator may enter data into the formitem. If the operator just presses Enter, the formitem is not changed. The cursor is not permitted to move out of the formitem, as it would be if GET were used. ENTERITEM returns TRUE if the item was found, was visible, and was indeed changed by the user, FALSE otherwise.

It is the programmer's responsibility to make sure that the item is visible. Use VDISPLAY to control which part of the form is on screen.

Example:

```
IF ENTERITEM (B, PART#, 2) THEN ...
```

This moves the cursor to the item PART# in line # 2 on the secondary form, and lets the operator key in data. If there is no line# 2 or if the PART# in the secondary file is not being displayed, or if the operator doesn't key in any data (i.e., just presses Enter) it will be FALSE.

ENTERITEM and GOTOITEM are useful for having users enter data under the control of a procedure. By using them you can allow users to enter data into a secondary form.

ERASEFORM (filename) Procedure.

Example: See FILING COMMAND PROCEDURES, below.

ERRORMSG (msg) Procedure.

Displays a message in a pop-up box and waits for the user to press ENTER. Uses the current error box color.

Example:

```
ERRORMSG ('I/O Error');
```

EXT_PRINTFILE (filename) Procedure.

Behaves just as PRINTFILE if the file does not exist. But if the file does exist, PRINT output will be appended to it (instead of deleting the existing file and creating a new one, as PRINTFILE does).

Example:

```
ext_printfile ('myoutput.txt');
```

FALSE Function.

Returns a value when used in an expression. FALSE has an internal value of zero.

Example: See TRUE, below.

FGET (S-item, code-item, keyvalue-item) Procedure.

Gets a response from the keyboard. The user may key in a string, or, if no characters have been keyed in, may press a function key or a control key combination or the Escape key. FGET echos alphanumeric characters only. Returns:

If code is:

- 0 The string (in S) is valid, and was ended with a CR (the Enter key). The CR is not echoed.
- 1 The user pressed a non-alphanumeric key. Keyvalue contains a key value which was prefixed, (i.e. an IBM PC extended key code).
- 2 The user pressed a non-alphanumeric key. Keyvalue contains a key value which was not prefixed.

Example:

```
VAR S, CODE, KEY;
    {declaration of three variables}
FGET (S, CODE, KEY);
```

will do the following:

If operator types:	S	CODE	KEY
ABC	'ABC'	0	undefined
PgUp (ext. code 73)		1	73
Esc		2	27

If the operator typed in an alphanumeric value, then that value will be in S and CODE will be 0. If the operator pressed PgUp (Extended key code 73),

then KEY will contain 73 and CODE will contain 1 to indicate that the 73 is an Extended key code and not an ASCII code. (ASCII code 73 would be the capital letter I.) If the operator pressed ESC (ASCII code 27), then CODE will contain 2 and KEY will contain 27.

Note: The keyboard codes are listed in the IBM Technical Reference Manual. If you don't have a reference manual, write a procedure that will show you the codes as you press the keys.

FGET is used when you want the operator to press a function key in response to your procedure. The more usual GET does not allow use of function keys or Escape.

FILING COMMAND PROCEDURES

The following procedures perform a VersaForm command on either the primary (A) or secondary (B) file, using the current values of the key items to locate a form:

GETFORM (File)	REMOVEFORM (File)
FIRSTFORM (File)	SAVEFORM (File)
CLEARFORM (File)	LASTFORM; (File)
NEXTFORM (File)	BACKFORM (File)
ERASEFORM (File) (Undo)	

Example: Assuming that PART# is the key for form A,

```

PART# := 55;
GETFORM (A) ; {Gets form for part number 55}
IF NOT IOERROR THEN
IF PRICE > 10.00 THEN
  BEGIN
  PRICE = 1.1 * PRICE ; {raise the price}
  SAVEFORM (A) ;
  END
ELSE
  REMOVEFORM (A) ; {or remove the item}

```

When these procedures are used, the IOERROR function should be used to test whether the operation was successful. For example:

```

GETFORM (B) ;
IF IOERROR THEN
  PROMPT ("ERROR READING FORM")ELSE
  BEGIN {GETFORM was successful}

```

FIELDTYPE (File, item name): 0, 1, or 2 Function.

Returns:

- 0 if the field named is not present
- 1 if it is a single item
- 2 if it is a column.

Finds out whether **item name** is one of the fields in File. **Item name** can be a string or a variable. If **item name** is a field name it is the contents of that field that is denoted, not the field itself.

Example:

```
If fieldtype (A, 'Customer') > 0 then
...
```

will find out if there is a field named "customer" on this form.

Example:

```
var x;
begin x := 'address';
if fieldtype (a, x) = 0 then
  infomsg ('There is no field named '& x &' on this
  form.');
```

will inform the user that no field named "address" exists on the form.

FINDLINE(formitem, ex) Function.

Finds the line number for column item FORMITEM that is equal to the value of EX.

Example:

```
B.L# := FINDLINE (B.QTY, 10) ;
```

B.L# is the line on which the column item B.Qty is 10. If the value is not found, B.L# gets a value of zero (0).

FIRSTFORM (File) Procedure.

Example: See FILING COMMAND PROCEDURES, above.

FORMAT (ex-format, ex-string) Function

Format is used to change the format of a given piece of data. For example, it is used to convert a string to uppercase or strip non-numeric digits. If two codes are given, they are applied in left-to-right order.

Format Codes:

- 0-9 specifies number of decimal places for a number
- # remove all characters that are not between 0 and 9.

- A remove all characters that are not between A and Z or a and z.
- D converts a date into its text equivalent; for example, 7/3/95 would be converted to July 3, 1995
- L converts a string into lower case
- N remove all characters that are not between 0 and 9, '+', '-' or '.'
- U converts a string to upper case
- V removes all characters that are not between A and Z or 0 and 9.
- W replaces by a space all characters not between A and Z or 0 and 9.
- Y formats a date as YYYYMMDD

Example:

```
format ('DU', '4/1/95') returns APRIL 1, 1995
format (1, 123.4567) returns 123.4
format ('2#', 344.3241) returns 34432
```

FORMATSEQUAL (File1, File2) Function.

Returns TRUE if the form designs of the two files File1 and File2 are the same. For this purpose, only data fields are considered.

FORMFEED Function.

Returns the ASCII form feed character (decimal value 12), which causes a form feed on most printers.

Example of FORMFEED and CR:

```
PRINT (FORMFEED & 'Top of page' & CR
& 'Next line')
```

would print at the top of a page:

```
Top of page
Next line
```

GET (item) Procedure.

Gets value from console typed in by the user.

Example:

```
PROMPT ('Enter new price ') ;
GET (PRICE) ;
```



After writing "Enter new price ", VersaForm XL waits for the operator to enter a value. The value will be placed in PRICE.

GETCH (ch, code, keyvalue) Procedure.

Reads a character from the keyboard and does not echo it to the screen.

Returns:

If code is:

- 0 The character (in CH) is a valid alphanumeric character (that is, one that VersaForm XL would accept as data).
- 1 The user pressed a non-alphanumeric key. Keyvalue contains a key value which was prefixed, (i.e. an IBM PC extended key code). The function keys - behave this way.
- 2 The user pressed a non-alphanumeric key. Keyvalue contains a key value which was not prefixed. Most control key combinations (as well as Escape) behave this way.

This command is useful in a START procedure to get a password from the operator.

Example

```

var char, code, key;
begin
getch (char, code, key);
if code = 0 then
    {process the character}
else if code = 1 then
    begin if key = 59 then
        {process function key F1};
    end
else if code = 2 then if key = 27 then
    {process escape};

```

GETFORM (File) Procedure.

Example: See FILING COMMAND PROCEDURES, above

GETXY (x-item, y-item) Procedure.

Returns the current cursor location in the two parameter items.

Example:

```

var x, y;
...
getxy (x,y);    {gets cursor location}
...
gotoxy (x,y);   {return to where you were}

```

GETPARAM Function.

Used in a CALLED procedure to get the passed parameter.

Example:

```
if SQRT is a procedure that was
called by
  if CALL (a, 'SQRT', 7) then ...
then in SQRT,
  x := GETPARAM;
will assign 7 to x.
```

GOTOITEM (File, formitem, exp) Function.

Moves the cursor to the formitem. If the formitem is a detail item (i.e., a columnar item), exp is the line number and must be between 0 and the depth of the form. If the location is legal and visible, then GOTOITEM returns TRUE, else it returns FALSE.

It is the programmer's responsibility to make sure that the item is visible. Use VDISPLAY to control which part of the form is on screen.

Example:

```
IF GOTOITEM (B, PART#, 2) THEN ...
```

This example moves the cursor to the item PART# in line # 2 on the secondary form. If there is no line# 2 or if the PART# in the secondary file is not being displayed, it will be FALSE.

GOTOXY (exp1, exp2) Procedure.

Moves the cursor to the exp1'th column and the exp2'th line.

Example:

```
GOTOXY (5, 0)
```

This statement moves the cursor to column 5 (the sixth column), row 0 (the top row) on the screen.

GOTOXY would be useful when constructing a menu inside a procedure.

INFMSG (msg) Procedure.

Displays a message in a pop-up box and waits for the user to press ENTER.

Example:

```
INFMSG ('Hello, World');
```

INSERTLINE (File, N) Procedure.

Inserts a blank column line before line N.

Example:

```
INSERTLINE (A,1) ;  
DESCRIPTION [1] := 'BALANCE FORWARD' ;  
AMOUNT [1] := 25.00 ;
```

This inserts a blank line as the first column line on the form (before existing line 1) and sets up a balance forward charge on that line.

In order to insert a line after the last column line on a form, do the following:

```
B.L# := LASTLINE (B) + 1 ;  
INSERTLINE (B, B.L#) ;
```

On a form with 10 lines, this would first make B.L# have the value 11, and then insert a new line before line 11 (i.e., after line 10). INSERTLINE (B,12) would be illegal. You cannot assign a value to an item on a new line until the INSERTLINE procedure has been used to add the line to the form.

When a procedure first runs, L# is assumed to be zero (0) on the secondary form. You must assign a legal line number value to B.L# before referencing column lines on the secondary form.

IOERROR Function.

Returns TRUE if an input/output error has occurred when reading or writing a form, or a DOS file.

IOERROR also becomes true when trying to read or write after end of file is reached. Thus it can be used to stop procedures that repeat until the end of file is reached.

Example:

```
REPEAT  
NEXTFORM (A) ;  
UNTIL IOERROR ;
```

This reads each form in the file until the last form has been read or an error occurs reading a form.

JUSTIFY (ex-string, ex-length, ex-type) Function.

Returns a string that is justified left, right, center or right justified and zero filled. The string returned will be the length specified.

Type can be one of the following:

- C Center the string
- L Left justify the string
- R Right justify the string
- Z Right justify the string and fill the blanks with zeros

Example:

```
var S;
begin
clearscreen;
gotoxy (0,12);
s := justify ('Hello World!', 80, 'C');
put (s);
end;
```

The result is "Hello World" centered in an 80-character string.

KEYSTRUCK Function.

Returns TRUE if a key has been pressed, and ignores the character that was entered.

Example:

```
IF KEYSTRUCK THEN
BEGIN
PROMPT('Printing halted. Press any key to resume');
REPEAT {empty loop--waits for user}
UNTIL KEYSTRUCK ;
END ;
```

This will send the prompt only if the user has pressed a key, and then allows the user to resume by pressing another key. This function can be used in a loop to allow the operator to quit the process.

LASTCOMMAND Function.

Returns a value (see Command Procedures, above) indicating which was the last command requested.

Example:

```
if lastcommand = '?' then {provide help}
```

LASTFORM (File) Procedure.

Example: See FILING COMMAND PROCEDURES, above

LASTLINE (File) Function.

Returns the current number of column lines on a form.

Example:

```
L# := 1 ;
REPEAT
PRICE := .9 * PRICE;
L# := L# + 1 ;
UNTIL L# > LASTLINE (A);
```

This example reduces the **PRICE** on each line, including the last line, by 10%.

LASTPOSN (s1, s2) Function.

Returns the location of the last occurrence of s1 in s2. See **POSN**.

LENGTH (ex) Function.

Returns the length of EX.

Example:

```
PRINT (LENGTH ('12345678')) ;
```

This prints the value "8" because the length of the string '12345678' is 8 characters.

LOCKFILE (File, exclusive/shared) Function.

Multi-user version only. Requests a lock of the current file. Returns blank if the lock was granted, holder's name if not.

Example:

```
VAR X;  
Begin  
X := LockFile (A, exclusive);  
if X <> '' then  
  infomsg('this lock is held by ' & x)  
else {the lock was granted}  
begin...
```

LOCKFORM (File, exclusive/shared) Function

Multi-user version only. Used to request a lock of the current form, returns blank if the lock was granted or the holder's name if someone already holds the lock.

Example:

```
VAR X;  
Begin  
X := LockForm (A, exclusive);  
if X <> '' then  
  infomsg ('this lock is held by ' & x)  
else {the lock was granted}  
begin...
```

LTRIM (ex-string) Function

Removes the leading blanks from a string and returns the new string.

Example:

```
var s;
begin
s := ltrim ('          VersaForm');
prompt (s);
end;
```

The result is 'VersaForm'.

MAX (ex1, ex2) Function.

Returns the larger of EX1 and EX2.

Example:

```
PRICE := MAX (NEWPRICE, 1.1 * PRICE);
```

This example replaces PRICE with NEWPRICE or the old PRICE times 1.1, whichever is larger.

MAXLINE (File) Function.

The maximum number of column lines this form can contain.

Example:

```
L# := LASTLINE (A);
WHILE L# < MAXLINE (A) DO
BEGIN
L# := L# + 1 ;
INSERTLINE (A,L#) ;
PRICE := 0 ;END ;
```

This example adds enough lines to the form to completely fill it (starting with LASTLINE + 1 and ending with MAXLINE) and sets PRICE on each new line to 0.

MIN (ex1, ex2) Function.

Returns the smaller of EX1 and EX2.

Example:

```
PRICE := MIN (NEWPRICE, 1.1 * PRICE);
```

Replaces PRICE with NEWPRICE or the old PRICE times 1.1, whichever is smaller.

MENU (File--handle of an open menu file**ex2--part 1 of the key of the menu record on the menu file****ex3--part 2 of the key of the menu record file on the menu file,****item--function chosen by the user****item--arg 1 of the function chosen by the user,****item--arg 2 of the function chosen by the user) Function.**

Displays a menu as defined on a custom menu file, which must be an open file, and returns a code indicating whether the menu was displayed successfully, and three codes indicating the choice made. The menu definition form on the custom menu file must match that of the files APPMENU and VMENU.VFS.

Example:

```
var funct, arg1, arg2;
if menu (menufile, 'menukey1', 'menukey2',
    funct, arg1, arg2) then
    if funct = '' then infomsg ('no choice was made.')
else
    infomsg ('Choice was made. Function chosen = ' &
        funct &
        ', arg1 = ' & arg1 &
        ', arg2 = ' & arg2);
```

NEXTFORM (File) Procedure.

Example: See FILING COMMAND PROCEDURES, above.

NORMAL_VID Function.

Returns current normal video attributes as a single number

ORD (value) Function.

Returns the ASCII value of the character passed as the value. If the value passed to ORD is not exactly one character long, then ORD will return a value of -1.

Example: Converts upper case to lower

```
var s;
if (ord (s) >= ord ('A')) and
    (ord (s) <= ord ('Z')) then
    s := chr (ord (s) + 32);
```

PAD (Ex1, Ex2) Function.

Returns the value of EX1 left justified in a string with a length of EX2 characters.

Example: Prints the value "ABC *"

```
PRINT (PAD ('ABC', 5) & '*')
```

Note: If the length of EX1 is greater than EX2 no truncation or padding takes place.

PAGE (File, Ex) Procedure.

Displays a form starting with a line number given by EX.

Example: will display the secondary form starting at line number 10.

```
PAGE (B, 10);
```

Note: PAGE performs the same function as DISPLAY (B) except that you can control which page of the column area is shown. You can use this procedure to display the appropriate range of lines before values are assigned to column items. This allows the user to see the assignment take place.

During validation the top line to be shown (given by EX) cannot be changed. Any value supplied will be ignored. PAGE should not be used in a CHECKING procedure.

PgDn (File) Procedure.

Has the effect of the Page Forward command.

PgUp (File) Procedure.

Has the effect of the Page Backward command.

Example:

```
PGUP (A);
```

PICKFIELD (file, fieldname-exp) Function.

Pickfield is used to pick a field from a given form. If the form is not already displayed it will display it. A field is selected by moving to the field and typing the letter 'X'. Fieldname, if not empty, is the name of the field you want the cursor to start at.

Example:

```
var x;  
begin  
x := pickfield (b, 'City');  
display (a);  
infomsg ('You selected the field  
named ' & x);  
end;
```

PICKFILE (ex-window handle, ex-starting point) Function.

Presents the contents of a text file in the given window, and returns item that the operator chooses. The file used is TEXTINPUT. Returns a null string if the operator presses Escape.

Example:

```
set (silent);
set (user_may_escape);
textinput ('choices.txt');
if not ioerror then
  begin
    start := answermsg ('Enter starting point: ', start);
    win := vopen_win (2, 2, 44, 20, reverse_vid, 'Choices');
    if win > 0 then
      begin
        choice := pickfile (win, start);
        if vclose_win (win) then;
          if choice <> '' then newvalue := choice;
        end;
      end;
    textinput (close);
    pop (user_may_escape);
    pop (silent);
```

PICKINDEX (file, ex-index name, ex-window handle, ex-start point);

Function.

Offers a list to the operator in the designated window. The list is the index of the designated file, and starts at the given starting point. The index name specifies which index to display; vldata for the data index, vpfmtobj for the print formats, etc. Returns the item chosen as the function value, the null string if no choice was made. Honors the USER_MAY_ESCAPE flag.

Example:

```
set (silent);
filehandle := vopen ('datafile');
if filehandle <> 0 then
  begin
    win := vopen_win (2, 2, 40 {w}, 10 {h}, reverse_vid,
      'Choose Print Format');
    if win <> 0 then
      begin
        set (user_may_escape);
        print_fmt := pickindex (filehandle, vpfmtobj, win, 0);
        pop (user_may_escape);
      end;
    if vclose_win (win) then;
    if vclose (filehandle) then;
    pop (silent);
  end;
```

PICKLIST (ex-window handle, ex-list handle, item) Function.

Offers a list to the operator in the designated window. The list must have been made previously with VOPEN_LIST and APPENDLIST. Returns as the function value the number of the item chosen; 0 if no choice was made. Honors the USER_MAY_ESCAPE flag. The choice itself is returned in the third parameter.

Example:

```
list := vopen_list;
if list > 0 then
  begin
    dummy := appendlist (list, blue);
    dummy := appendlist (list, green);
    dummy := appendlist (list, red);
    dummy := appendlist (list, yellow);
    win := vopen_win (2, 2, 20, 6, revers_vid, '4 Choices');
    if win > 0 then
      begin
        set (user_may_escape);
        choice := picklist (list, win, dummy);
        pop(user_may_escape);
        if vclose_win (win) then;
          end;
        if vclose_list (list) then;
          end;
      end;
    end;
```

POP (flag) Procedure.

Returns an internal flag to its previous state, before the last SET or CLEAR.

POS (ex1, ex2) Function.

Returns a number indicating the first position of EX1 within EX2. If EX1 is not contained in EX2, the value returned is 0.

Example:

```
POS ('/', '12345/78/')
```

This example returns a value of 6.

WARNING: This function is case-sensitive. The statement, POS ('a', 'CAT'), returns 0, not 2.

POSN (pattern, target) Function.

This is like POS, but it is not case-sensitive. If you're looking for Bob, POS will find only Bob but POSN will find bob, BOB, BoB, etc.

PREVENT_DELETE (File) Function

Returns True if the file has been set up (in the Form Design process) so that deleting lines and removing forms are **prohibited**. Procedures need to know this to avoid deleting lines and forms when they really shouldn't.

PRINT (ex) Procedure.

Writes a value (given by EX) to the printer.

Example:

```
PRINT ('The new price for item no.' &
      ITEMNUM & 'is $' & PRICE) ;
```

If ITEMNUM is "A66" and price is 33 then "The new price for item no. A66 is \$33" will be printed.

PRINT_CTL_STR Function.

Returns the current user default printer control string.

PRINTFILE (ex) Procedure.

Opens a file (usually on disk) that will receive any data from a PRINT statement. The data is redirected to this file instead of going to the printer. An existing file is overwritten. If EX is the reserved word CLOSE, the current print file is closed and any further PRINT statements will go to the printer. See also EXT-PRINTFILE.

Example:

```
PRINTFILE ('A:OUTPUT.TXT');
      { this opens a file on drive A }
PRINT ('HELLO' & CR);
      { writes a line to OUTPUT.TXT}
PRINTFILE (CLOSE);
      { closes the file }
PRINT ('HELLO' & CR);
      {this will appear on the printer}
```


PRINTFORM (File, ex1, ex2) Procedure.

Prints according to the format named by EX1 stored in the file. If EX1 is blank or null, the screen format is used (just as in the PRINT command).

EX2 is a string expression containing the values of variable comments that would otherwise be prompted for by the print format.

Example: Prints the data currently on the primary form using the format 'INVFMT'. EX2 is null because we assume there are no variable comments in this format.

```
PRINTFORM (A, 'INVFMT', '');
```

Note: If a print format has been designed with variable comments, these values can be supplied when the form is printed. When the PRINT command is issued from the command menu in filing and a print format name is given, the user will be prompted for values to variable comments (if the print format has them). The user may enter a value or press  to ignore the comment.

When a procedure invokes a print format, it supplies the values for the variable comments as a string expression which can be up to 80 characters in length. Each comment in EX2 is separated by a special character. The special character (a delimiter) is determined by you, by making it the first character in EX2. An example illustrates what is required:

To include variables in Print Formats you must include a V@GETARG statement in your print format. The V@GETARG allows you to pass parameters through a PRINTFORM statement. The V@GETARG statement does not need to be in a specific order in the PRINT FORMAT, you can place it anywhere because you specify the order in the print format as one of its arguments. The syntax for a V@GETARG is as follows:

```
V@GETARG (1, 'x')
```

The 1 tells the PRINTFORM statement that 'x' is the first parameter to pass through the printformat. The 'x' is the parameter to be passed. 'x' can hold any value. To pass any other parameters through the PRINTFORM statement simply use another V@GETARG (2,'y'). The 2 in this statement specifies that 'y' is the second parameter to be passed through the printform statement.

In the PRINTFORM statement you could have:

```
PRINTFORM (A, 'INVFMT', '!' & x & '!' & y & '!')
```

If you wanted to print x or y more than one time you simply need to include additional V@GETARG statements for each variable. For example,

```
V@GETARG (1, 'x') --> Pass 'x' first
V@GETARG (2, 'y') --> Pass 'y' second
V@GETARG (3, 'x') --> Pass 'x' again for third parameter
V@GETARG (4, 'y') --> Pass 'y' again for fourth parameter
```

This would work with the above PRINTFORM statement. You need to include the parameters to be passed in the PRINTFORM statement only one time. For each additional time you need to pass the parameter just include another V@GETARG statement to your Print Format in the order you want it to appear in the print format.

If the parameter is equal to ' ' (the empty string) a window will pop-up and prompt the user to enter a value for that parameter.

PRINT_LABELS (file1--label definition file, file2--label setup file, Ex--name of the text file with the label data) Function.

Runs the label printer. Usually you would want to run a report first, to produce the label file. The function returns either TRUE or FALSE, indicating whether it ran successfully. To prepare for running the label printer, you must have two files, each open to the correct form, one defining the physical characteristics of the label, and one defining the setup of the label. These files must have form designs that match LABELDEF.VFS and LABELSET.VFS, respectively.

Example:

```
if print_labels (deffile, setupfile, label_file_name) then
  infomsg ('Labels printed successfully');
```

PROGRAMPATH Function.

Returns the path of the VersaForm program files.

PROMPT (ex) Procedure.

Puts message (EX) at bottom of screen.

Example:

```
PROMPT ('The new price for item no.' &
        ITEMNUM & 'is $' & PRICE) ;
```

If ITEMNUM is "A66" and price is 33, then "The new price for item no. A66 is \$33" will be written at the bottom of the screen.

PUT (ex) Procedure.

Writes a value to the screen at the current cursor location.

Example:

```
PUT ('Enter new price for item no.' & ITEMNUM);
```

If ITEMNUM is "A66" then "Enter new price for item no. A66" will be written on the screen.(See the example procedure, "MENU.")

READ (item) Procedure.

Reads a line of data from a text file into ITEM.

Example: Reads a line from the currently open TEXTINPUT file into the form item A.NAME.

```
READ (A.NAME)
```

Note: Only 80 characters at most are read in at a time. A subsequent READ command will read the next 80 characters or until an "end-of-line" (a carriage return character) is encountered.

REMOVEFORM (File) Procedure.

Example: See FILING COMMAND PROCEDURES, above

Note: You must use GETFORM, or another form retrieval command, before using REMOVEFORM.

RESTATTR Procedure.

Restores the screen attributes in force before SETATTR was issued.

RETRIEVE (File, item name, N) Function.

Finds item name in File and returns the value. Item name can be a string or a variable. If item name is a field name it is the contents of that field that is denoted, not the field itself.

Example:

```
var x, y;
begin x := 'address';
y := retrieve (a, x, 0);
```

If there is a single item on the form called address, y will now have whatever was in it.

RETURN (ex) Procedure.

Exits from the procedure immediately. Returns the value (usually TRUE or FALSE) to the system. Required for a correct return from a *COMMAND procedure. If a RETURN is not issued, the default value returned is TRUE. This is reset at the beginning of each chain of procedures.

Example:

```
return (false);
```

(See also *COMMAND procedures in Chapter 14)

REVERSE_VID Function.

Returns current reverse video attributes as a single number.

ROLLBACK Procedure.

Multi-user version only. Performs a rollback.

Example:

```
rollback;
```

ROUND (ex1, n) Function.

Returns the value of EX1 rounded to **N** decimal places.

Example:

```
ROUND (8.1234567, 4)
```

This returns the value 8.1235. Note that the value was rounded, not truncated.

RPAD (ex1, ex2) Function.

Returns the value of EX1 right justified in a string with a length of EX2 characters.

Example:

```
PRINT ('*' & RPAD (10.55, 7));
```

This example prints the value '*****10.55'

RTRIM (ex-string) Function.

Removes the trailing blanks from a string and returns a new string.

Example:

```
var s
begin
s := rtrim ('VersaForm      ');
prompt (s);
end;
```

The result is 'VersaForm'.

RUN_REPORT (File, Report name) Function

Runs a report. The report must have been defined previously, as there is no provision for defining a report from a procedure. This function does not lock either the report or the file; you must do that yourself. Nor does it print labels, you must also do that (see the built-in Print_labels). If the report is in export format, a file name should be defined in the report definition too prevent the user being asked by the system whether he wants to print labels now.

Run_report returns a code that indicates whether the report was run successfully.

The codes are:

- 0** report was produced
- 1** report failed because input parameters were not processed successfully
- 2** report failed because file was not read successfully
- 3** report failed because file was not sorted successfully

- 4 report failed because output was not printed successfully
- 5 user_halted_the report during file processing
- 6 user_halted_the report during printing
- 7 no_records_were selected; there is no outputExample:

```

if run_report (a, 'slsrpt') = 0 then
  infomsg ('Report produced')
else
  errormsg ('Report failed');
```

SAVEFORM (File) Procedure.

Example: See FILING COMMAND PROCEDURES, above.

SAVENEDED (File) Function.

Returns true or false according to whether the form has been changed since it was last saved.

Example:

```

if saveneeded (a) then saveform (a);
```

SEARCHLINE (File, ex-item name, ex-line to start at, ex-target) Function.

Like FINDLINE, SEARCHLINE finds the first line meeting the given test.

Extensions are:

As in ASSIGN and RETRIEVE, the item name must be in a variable or in quotes. SEARCHLINE works on files opened with VOPEN, and can start searching at any line.

SEARCHLINE can search for lines meeting other than equality. It can search for lines with values not equal, less or greater than the target, or lines that contain or do not contain the target. Specify the type of search by the first one or two characters of the target, according to the same rules as the SEARCH command. **Exception:** the two dots indicating a leading or trailing substring may not be used.

Example:

```

linenum := SEARCHLINE (b, 'amount', 1, '>1000');
if linenum > 0 then ...
```

This searches the column headed "amount" in the form B for a value greater than 1000, starting at line 1. If the target (in this case 1000) is in a form item or a variable, construct the target string dynamically. For instance, if the variable were called **target**, you could write:

```

SEARCHLINE (b, 'amount', 1, '>' & target);
```

SELECT (ex-boolean, ex-value if true, ex-value if false) Function.

Returns the value specified by "value if true" if bool evaluates to true; otherwise it returns the value specified by "value if false".

Example:

```
var x, y;
begin
prompt ('Enter x value: ');
get (x);
prompt ('Enter y value: ');
get (y);
prompt (select (x=y, 'Numbers are equal',
'Numbers are different'));
end;
```

SET/CLEAR/POP (mode) Procedure.

Set ROUNDING or PADDING.

Example:

```
SET (ROUNDING) ;
```

SET/CLEAR/POP (auto_lock) Procedure.

Turns automatic locking on or off, or returns the flag to its previous state. Multi-user version only.

SET/CLEAR/POP (autoprompt) Procedure.

Turns autoprompting on or off, or returns the flag to its previous state.

SET/CLEAR/POP (locking) Procedure.

Turns all locking on or off, or returns the flag to its previous state. Multi-user version only.

WARNING: Using this command is not foreseen or recommended. It is provided for the use of experienced programmers only, when the other facilities will not serve.

SET/CLEAR/POP (rollback_on) Procedure.

Turns ROLLBACK capability on or off, or returns the flag to its previous state. Multi-user version only. If ROLLBACK_ON is cleared, the system will not remember the information that would be needed for a ROLLBACK.

SET/CLEAR/POP (silent) Procedure.

Normal operational messages (such as "form found" or "form not found") and the associated beeps are suppressed.

SET/CLEAR/POP (user_may_escape) Procedure.

Turns USER_MAY_ESCAPE capability on or off, or returns the flag to its previous state.

SETATTR (foreground, background) Procedure.

Sets the screen attributes (color, blinking, etc.). Both foreground and background should be numbers less than 16. What these numbers actually represent depends on your display adapter.

For the CGA, values are:

0=black	8=gray (foreground only)
1=blue	9=light blue ("
2=green	10=light green ("
3=cyan	11=light cyan ("
4=red	12=light red ("
5=magenta	13=light. magenta ("
6=brown	14=yellow ("
7=white	15=bright white ("

Example: Prints "Hello, world" in yellow on blue.

```
setattr (14,1);
put ('Hello, world');
```

SET_ATTRIB (attributes) Procedure.

Sets the screen attributes (color, blinking, etc.). Both foreground and background are combined in one number between 0 and 255. What this number actually represents depends on your display adapter. It combines foreground and background attribute in one number by multiplying the background number by 16 and then adding the foreground number.

Example:

```
SET_ATTRIB (31);
```

Sets the screen attributes to white on blue.

SETFLDINFO (File, ex-field name, ex-what to set, ex-value to set) Function.

Sets the attribute of the given field to the desired value. Returns the previous value of that field attribute.

Example:

```
x := SETFLDINFO (a, 'customer',
vpick, true);
```

SETUP_COPYFORM (source-file, target-file, trans-file) Function.

Tells the copyform procedure to copy only the fields specified in the transfer file, to perform a copy by name, or both. It does so by building a transfer list in memory that copyform will follow. The trans-file argument contains the file handle to the transfer file. If you put a 0 in the trans-file argument,

copyform will do a straight copy by name. If it can successfully build a transfer list it returns TRUE; otherwise, it returns FALSE. This function is not needed if the source and target form designs match.

Example:

```
var trans;
begin
firstform (a);
trans := vopen ('TRANSFER');
if trans <> 0 then
begin
assign (trans, 'key', 0, 'Example');
getform (trans);
if setup_copyform (a, b, trans) then
while not ioerror do
begin
clearform (b);
copyform (a, b);
saveform (b);
nextform (b);
end;
close_copyform;
if vclose (trans) then;
end;
end;
```

The above procedure will copy the fields specified in 'Example' in the transfer file from the primary file to the secondary file.

SETUP_PRINTFORM (File, ex-pfmtname) Function.

Setups up a print format before issuing the printform statement. It need only be used if the print format contains escape sequences or downloads font or overlay files to the printer. It returns TRUE if it was successful, FALSE otherwise.

Example:

```
firstform (b);
setup_printform (b, 'Invoice');
while not ioerror do
begin
printform (b, 'Invoice', '');
nextform (b);
end;
```

SIZE (formitem) Function.

Returns the maximum number of characters that an item on a form can hold.

Example:

```
SIZE (A.PART#)
```

If the item PART# has space for 5 characters on the form, SIZE has a value of 5.

STR (ex1, ex2, ex3) Function.

Returns a sub-string of EX1 where EX2 is the starting position and EX3 is the maximum length of the result. If EX2 or EX3 are zero or negative or EX2 is out of bounds, the result is an empty string. EX3 may indicate a length that is greater than the length of EX1. In that case only the remaining portion of EX1 is returned.

Example: If the value of EX1 is 'ABCDEFGHJIJ' then

STR (EX1, 1, 3) {returns the value 'ABC'}
STR (EX1, 8, 5) {returns the value 'HIJ'}
STR (EX1, 12, 3) {returns the value ''}

If you wish to always have a result be a specific length (say 10 characters) in cases where the input value may be longer or shorter, combine the STR and PAD (or RPAD) functions as follows:

PAD (STR (EX1, 1, 10), 10);

If EX1 is longer than 10 characters STR will truncate it; if shorter, PAD will extend it.

SYSTEM_COLOR (ex-system color number) Function.

Returns the value of the system color attribute corresponding to the given system color number, as set by the currently effective user or system setup. The system color numbers are:

- 1: Menus attribute
- 2: Menu hilite attribute
- 3: Menu bold attribute
- 4: Information box attribute
- 5: Error box attribute
- 6: Zoom attribute

If any other argument is given, the function returns 0.

Example: get the current menu hilite attribute.

attrib := system_color (2);

TEST (Flag) Function.

Returns a value, (TRUE if Flag is ON, or FALSE if Flag is OFF) depending on test result. All flags that can be set using SET/CLEAR/POP procedures can be tested using this function.

TEST_PRINTF (File, ex1) Procedure.

Prints a test form according to the format named by EX1 stored in the named file.

TEXTINPUT (ex) Procedure.

Opens a file that can be read with the READ command. If EX is the reserved word, CLOSE, the file is closed.

Example:

TEXTINPUT ('A:OUTPUT.TXT');	{ opens file }
READ (DATA) ;	{ reads a line }
TEXTINPUT (CLOSE) ;	{ closes file }

TRUE Function.

Returns a value denoting truth when used in an expression. Though TRUE is technically a function, it behaves like a constant.

Example:

FLAG := TRUE ;	{set the value}
IF FLAG THEN BEGIN	{test the flag}
IF FLAG = TRUE THEN BEGIN	{means the same}

TRUE has an internal value of "1" and may be used in expressions or comparisons.

UNLOCKFILE (File) Procedure.

Multi-user version only. Unlocks a file.

Example:

UnlockFile (a);

UNLOCKFORM (File) Procedure.

Multi-user version only. Unlocks the current form.

Example:

UnlockForm (a);

USER_DID_ESCAPE Function.

If USER_MAY_ESCAPE is set, the user may press Escape in response to certain functions such as ANSWERMSG. If he does, USER_DID_ESCAPE will return TRUE.

USER_MAY_ESCAPE Function.

Used with SET, CLEAR, and POP. When set, the user may press Escape in response to certain functions such as ANSWERMSG.

VALNEEDED (File) Function.

VALNEEDED is used to determine if the current form on the specified file needs to be validated. If the form needs validation, VALNEEDED returns TRUE, otherwise it returns FALSE.

VCLOSE (Ex-File_handle) Function.

Closes a file and returns true if the file was closed, false otherwise. The parameter is the handle, NOT the file name.

Example:

```
if vclose (lookupfile) then
  prompt ('File closed');
```

VCLOSE_LIST (ex-list handle) Function.

Closes a list and returns TRUE if the closure was successful.

VCLOSE_WIN (window_handle) Function.

Closes the window and returns TRUE or FALSE.

Example:

```
if vclose_win (winhandle) then;
```

VCOLTOTAL (ex-file, ex-column name) Function.

Computes the total of the column whose name is given. As in ASSIGN and RETRIEVE, the column name must be in a variable or in quotes.

VCOLTOTAL works on files opened with VOPEN. *See also COLTOTAL.*

Example:

```
myfile := vopen ('filename');
if myfile > 0 then
  total := VCOLTOTAL (myfile, 'amount');
```

VCOMPARE (from-file, to-file, formtype, oldkey-ex, newkey-ex, numcompared-ex, numequal-item) Function.

Compares the form of the given type in the FROM file with key = OLDKEY to the form in the TO file with key = NEWKEY. The two files may be the same. VCOMPARE returns an error code as the function result; if no error has occurred then NUMCOMPARED contains the number of forms compared and NUMEQUAL contains the number of those forms that were equal.

Error codes:

- 0-no error
- 1-reserved
- 2-the index for the FROM form type was not found.
- 3-the index for the TO form type was not found.

Example:

```

if (VCOMPARE (A, B, VREPORT, 'SALES', 'INCOME',
              NUMCOMPARED, NUMEQUAL)=0) then
  if (NUMCOMPARED>0) and (NUMCOMPARED = NUMEQUAL) then
  ...
    {the report SALES on A and the report INCOME on B
     are equal}..

```

This example would compare the report SALES on file A to the report INCOME on B. If VCOMPARE returns 0 there was no error, and if the NUMCOMPARED was equal to NUMEQUAL then all the forms compared were equal.

VCOPY (from-file, to-file, formtype, oldkey-ex, newkey-ex, replace?-ex, num-item) Function.

Copies the form of the given type in the FROM file with the OLDKEY to the TO file with NEWKEY. The two files may be the same. REPLACE? must be either TRUE or FALSE; if TRUE, existing forms on the TO file are to be replaced. VCOPY Returns an error code as the function result; if no error has occurred then NUM contains the number of forms copied.

Error codes:

- 0-no error
- 1-reserved
- 2-the index for the FROM form type was not found.
- 3-the index for the TO form type was not found.

Example:

```

if (VCOPY (A, B, VREPORT, 'SALES', 'INCOME', TRUE,
          NUMCOPIED)=0)
then
  if NUMCOPIED >= 1 then...
    {the report SALES was copied}..

```

This would copy the report SALES on file A to INCOME on file B, replacing any old reports of the same name. If VCOPY returns 0 there was no error, and if the NUMCOPIED was 1 or more then the report was found and it was copied.

VCOUNT (file, formtype, key-ex1, num-item) Function.

Counts the number of forms of the given type in the given file with the given key. If KEY is *.* , all forms in that index are counted. Returns an error code as the function result; if no error has occurred then NUM contains the number of forms.

Error codes:

- 0-no error

- 1-reserved
- 2-the index for the form type was not found.

Example:

```
if (VCOUNT (A, VREPORT, 'SALES', NUMCOUNTED)=0)
then
  {NUMCOUNTED has the number of report forms
  encountered that belong to the report SALES.}
```

This would count the forms in the report SALES on file A. If VCOUNT returns 0 there was no error, and if the number of forms counted was 1 or greater then the report was found. (There may be more than one form in a report, because of selection conditions, etc.)

VDATE Function.

Returns current date.

Example:

```
PRINT ('BILLING DATE: ' & VDATE) ;
```

If the date is 12/17/84,"BILLING DATE: 12/17/84" will be printed.

VDAY (ex) Function.

If value of EX is a date, returns a number from 1..31; otherwise, 0.

Example: See the example for VMONTH.

VDELETE (File, Formtype, Key-Ex1, Num-Item) Function.

Deletes the form of the given type in the given file with the given key. If KEY is *.* , all forms in that index are deleted. Returns an error code as the function result; if no error has occurred then NUM contains the number of forms deleted.

Error codes:

- 0-no error
- 1-reserved
- 2-the index for the form type was not found

Example:

```
if (VDELETE (A, VREPORT, 'SALES', NUMDELETED)=0)
then
  if NUMDELETED = 1 then...
    {the report SALES was deleted from A}..
```

This would delete the report SALES from file A. If VDELETE returns 0 there was no error, and if the number of forms deleted was 1 then the report was found and it was deleted.

In addition, for VDELETE only, formtype can have the value VDOS, indicating the DOS operating system and its files.

VDISPLAY (File, ex1, ex2) Procedure.

Displays the form (either A or B), placing the column given by EX1 and the row given by EX2 at the upper left corner of the screen.

Example:

```
VDISPLAY (A, 80, 0);
```

This example would display form A starting at column 80 and row 0; in other words, the right half of the first 24 lines of the form. Release 4.1 and later only.

VEXIT Procedure.

Exits to the Main Menu. VEXIT, when used in a START procedure, enables the programmer to deny the operator entry to the Filing function. It is useful for implementing password protection, and other applications in which a procedure should remain in complete control.

Example:

```
VEXIT;
```

VFILE_HANDLE (file) Function.

Given a file name, returns the file handle, if it is open. If the file is not open, returns 0.

Example:

```
ledgerfile := vfile_handle ('ledger.vfm');
```

VFILE_NAME (ex) Function.

Given a file handle, returns the file name.

Example: The fragment below finds the handle of the primary file in order to use the CALL function for a procedure called "nextaux" which requires a file handle argument.

```
ledgerfile := vfile_handle ('ledger.vfm');
if ledgerfile > 0 then {ledger is open }
begin
  if call (ledgerfile, 'nextaux',
          vfile_handle (vfile_name(a))) then;
  display (a);
end;
```

VMONTH (ex) Function.

If value of EX is a date, this returns a number from 1..12; otherwise, 0.

Example:

```
IF VMONTH (VDATE) = 12 AND
    VDAY (VDATE) > 9 THEN
    PRINT ('SEASONS GREETINGS');
```

Prints greetings if the date is between December 10th and December 31st.

VNOKEY Function.

Designates the "no key" field attribute, for use with SETFLDINFO. This controls whether data can be entered into the field.

Example:

```
x := SETFLDINFO (a, 'customer',
    VNOKEY, true);
```

VOPEN Function.

Opens a file and returns the handle. Returns 0 if file was not opened.

Example:

```
lookupfile := vopen ('lookup.vf');
if lookupfile <> 0 then
    begin
```

VOPEN_LIST Function.

Opens a list and returns the list handle. Returns 0 if the list was not opened.

VOPEN_WIN (x, y, width, height, color, title); Function.

Opens a window of the given width and height with its upper left corner at (x,y). The values of x, y, width, and height must be such that the window fits on the screen.

Example:

```
var winhandle;

begin
winhandle := VOPEN_WIN (10, 10, 40,
    6, 31, 'VF WINDOW');
if winhandle > 0 then
    begin
        ...
```

VOUTPUT (string-exp) Procedure.

Writes the given string to the printer or textoutput file, but does not convert the Carriage Return Character to a Carriage Return/Line Feed sequence.

VPFMTOBJ Function.

Yields a value that internally denotes the compiled, or object, form of a print

format. Used in VCOPY and other routines that call for the type of a VersaForm object.

VPFMTSRC Function.

Yields a value that internally denotes print format source.

VPICK Function.

Designates the "pick list" field attribute, for use with SETFLDINFO. Fields with this attribute set have a "down arrow" displayed next to them on the screen. This is meant to indicate the presence of a pick list or a pick list procedure.

Example:

```
x := SETFLDINFO (a, 'customer',
VPICK, true);
```

VPUT (X position-ex, Y position-ex, color attribute-ex, message-ex);**Procedure**

Writes the message at the given coordinates with the color attribute specified. May be used within a window.

VQUIT Procedure.

Abruptly terminates the entire VersaForm XL program and returns to DOS.

VREADCH Function.

Reads a single character from the currently opened textinput file and returns it.

Example:

```
textinput ('COM1');
while not ioerror do
  put (vreadch);
textinput (close);
```

VRENAME (file, formtype, oldkey-ex1, newkey-ex2, num-item) Function.

Renames the form of the given type in the given file with the given key. Returns an error code as the function result; if no error has occurred then NUM contains the number of forms deleted.

Error codes:

0-no error

1-reserved

2-the index for the form type was not found

Example:

```
if (VRENAME (A, VREPORT, 'SALES',
'INCOME', NUMRENAMED)=0) then
  if NUMRENAMED = 1 then...
    {the report SALES was renamed}..
```

This would rename the report SALES on file A to INCOME. If VRENAME returns 0 there was no error, and if the number of forms renamed was 1 or more then the report was found and it was renamed.

VTIME Function.

Returns current time (obtained from the operating system), in the form HH:MM:SS.

Example:

```
PRINT ('The time is ' & VTIME);
```

At noon, this will print "The time is 12:00:00".

VSIZE (File, Fieldname) Function.

Returns the maximum number of characters that an item on a form can hold.

Example:

```
VSIZE (thisfile, 'PART#')
```

If `thisfile` is open and the item `PART#` has space for 5 characters on the form, `VSIZE` has a value of 5.

VUSER Function

Returns the ID of the current user.

Example:

```
Prompt
('your name is ' & vuser & ', isn't it?);
```

VYEAR (ex) Function.

If value of `EX` is a date, this returns a number from 1900 to 1999.

Example: If `X` is a variable, and this is 1984, and `FIRST YEAR` contains 6/16/64, then:

```
X := VYEAR (VDATE) - VYEAR (FIRSTYEAR) ;
PRINT ('IT HAS BEEN ' & X & ' YEARS') ;
```

This will print "IT HAS BEEN 20 YEARS."

YESNO Function.

Waits for a 'Y' or 'N' response from the user (followed by RETURN); returns True if the user pressed "Y" (or "y").

Example:

```
PROMPT ('Update the form? (Y/N) ') ;  
IF YESNO THEN  
  BEGIN ... { update the form }
```

WARNING: GET (ITEM) and YESNO are normally preceded by a message to the user, (e.g., a PROMPT). If this isn't done, the system will appear to the operator to have stopped running.

YESNOMSG (msg, default_yes_or_no) Function.

```
if YESNOMSG ('Continue? ', 'Y') then  
  ...;
```

The default reply is "Y". If the user enters "Y" or just presses return, the program will execute what follows the "then".

Chapter 16

SAMPLE PROCEDURES

This chapter illustrates a few advanced uses of procedures by presenting several examples. A line-by-line explanation follows each procedure. Many more sample procedures may be found in the VersaForm XL file PROCFILE. The reader is encouraged to study and use these examples, especially if he or she is not an experienced programmer.

Each example and its explanation are printed on facing pages, for easy examination.

A Menu Procedure

This procedure puts a menu on the screen and allows the user to select one of two USER procedures. The Secondary File and Key-from items are left blank, as there is no look-up.

```

                                PROCEDURE INSTRUCTIONS

Procedure Name MENU.....
Secondary File .....
Key-from1 ..... Key-from2 .....

L# .....Procedure.....
01 VAR CHOICE ;
02   BEGIN
03   CLEARSCREEN ;
04   PUT ( 'Update functions available' & cr & cr) ;
05   PUT ( '  1. Post several transactions' & cr) ;
06   PUT ( '  2. Perform global update' & cr & cr) ;
07   PUT ( 'Enter your choice: ') ;
08   GET ( CHOICE) ;
09   IF CHOICE = 1 THEN CHAIN ('POST') {no semicolon}
10   ELSE                               {before ELSE}
11     IF CHOICE = 2 THEN CHAIN ( 'GLOBAL' ) ;
12   END ;
```

Figure 16-1

EXPLANATION:

01 - The variable will hold the operator's choice.

02 - BEGIN signals the end of the variables and the beginning of the procedure.

03-07 These statements first clear the screen and then write the menu.

08 - The operator's choice is read from the keyboard.

09-11 A pair of nested IF statements determine what action to take. If the operator has keyed in anything other than 1 or 2, nothing will happen.

12 -END indicates the end of the procedure.

Invoicing - Sequential Numbering

```

PROCEDURE INSTRUCTIONS

Procedure Name *SAVE.....
Secondary File .....
Key-from1 ..... Key-from2 .....

L# .....Procedure.....
01 VAR TEMPINV ;
02 BEGIN
03   SAVEFORM ( A ) ;
04   PROMPT ( 'Prepare next invoice? ' ) ;   {ask}
05   IF YESNO THEN BEGIN   {if user says yes,}
06     TEMPINV := INV# + 1;   {increment invoice mber}
07     CLEARFORM ( A ) ;
08     INV# := TEMPINV ;   {put back new invoice mber}
09   END ;
10 END ;

```

Figure 16-2

This procedure will run during a FILING session. When the user SAVes an invoice, the procedure automatically prepares the next one by clearing the form and setting up the next invoice number.

- * The Secondary File item is left blank, since none is being used in this procedure.
- * The Key-from items are also left blank, since no lookup from a secondary file is to be done.

EXPLANATION:

- 01 - Establishes the variable TEMPINV to hold the invoice number temporarily.
- 02 - Indicates the beginning of a sequence of statements. The statements in this sequence are indented for clarity. A semicolon is not required after BEGIN.
- 03 - VersaForm XL will save the current (A) form and then...
- 04 - Ask (on the command line) if the user wants to prepare a new invoice.

Note the use of comments. Comments placed in braces { } are only for reference. No action is taken by the system.

- 05 - A response of "Y" will begin a second sequence by doing everything listed from the "BEGIN" until the first "END."
- 06 - Increments (raises) the previous invoice number by 1 and places it in the variable TEMPINV;
- 07 - Clears the form.
- 08 - Enters the new number in the proper place for the next invoice.
- 09 - Ends the sequence begun in line 05.
- 10 - Ends the sequence begun in line 02.

Removing Selected Lines Prior To Printing Statements

```

PROCEDURE INSTRUCTIONS

Procedure Name REMOVELINES.....
Secondary File .....
Key-from1 ..... Key-from2 .....

L# .....Procedure.....
01 VAR TEMPDATE ;
02 BEGIN
03   REPEAT PROMPT ('Enter removal date (mm/dd/yy): '
04     GET (TEMPDATE);    {get date from user}
05   UNTIL (TEMPDATE > '1/1/80') AND
06     (TEMPDATE < '12/30/99');
07   L# := LASTLINE (A);
08   REPEAT IF L# > 0 THEN
09     IF A.DATE <= TEMPDATE THEN DELETELINE (A, #);
10     L# := L# - 1; {go to next earlier date}
11   UNTIL L#=0 ;{until we are done}
12   BALANCEDUE := COLTOTAL ( AMOUNT ) ;
13                                     {recompute column total}
14 END ;

```

Figure 16-3

NOTE: An unusually long line in a procedure (see line 5 above) may be entered on two lines, breaking at any point which would allow a space. Indenting the second line further is a matter of preference.

This procedure removes column lines from a form, selected by date. In this example, a statement is to be generated showing activity after (greater than) a user specified date. The user will make available the form to be prepared, and then EXECUTE the USER procedure REMOVELINES.

As in the previous example, Secondary File and Key-from items are not filled in because the procedure does not involve another form or a lookup.

EXPLANATION:

- 01 - VAR TEMPDATE (variable temporary date)
- 03-06 - The operator is asked for the date which will control the removal process. The request will be repeated until a date after 1/1/80 and before 12/30/99 is keyed.
- 07-11 - Removes the lines (DELETEDLINE) that meet this criteria, repeating until all such lines are located by counting down from the last line on the form until L# = 0.
- 12 - After removing the lines, the current balance due must be computed by the procedure before the form can be printed.
- 13 - Comment.
- 14 - End of procedure.

Posting Several Transactions to an Inventory

```

      PROCEDURE INSTRUCTIONS
Procedure Name *SAVE .....
Secondary File INVENTORY .....
Key-from1 ..... Key-from2 .....

L# .....Procedure.....
01 A.L# := 1;
02 WHILE LASTLINE (A) >= A.L# DO
03   BEGIN
04   IF A.POSTED <> 'Y' THEN BEGIN
05     B.PART# := ITEM# ;
06     GETFORM (B) ;
07     IF IOERROR THEN PROMPT ( "ERROR" )
08     ELSE BEGIN
09       IF LASTLINE (B) < MAXLINE (B) THEN
10         BEGIN
11           B.L# := LASTLINE (B) + 1 ;
12           INSERTLINE ( B, B.L# ) ;
13           B.INV# := A.INV#;
14           B.TDATE := A.DATE;
15           B.QTY := A.QTY ;
16           B.TOTALQTY := COLTOTAL (B.QTY);
17           SAVEFORM (B) ;
18           IF NOT IOERROR THEN A.POSTED := 'Y';
19           END ;
20         END ;
21       END;
22     A.L# := A.L# + 1 ;
23     END ;

```

Figure 16-4

In this example, all the column line items on an invoice are to be posted to an inventory file.

For each line, the procedure looks up a PART# in INVENTORY. If the inventory form is found and the form is not full, a line is added to it with particulars on the part order. The item A.POSTED on the invoice will record a successful order.

EXPLANATION:

- 01 - The current line number for the primary form is set to 1.
- 02 - Here begins a loop which will be executed until L# reaches the last line on the primary form.
- 04 - Lines 05 to 21 will not be executed if posting has already occurred.
- 05 - The value of A.ITEM# is moved to B.PART#.
- 06 - A new secondary form (B.PART# is the key) is retrieved.
- 07 - If an I/O error has occurred, then the operator is warned; otherwise,
- 08 - all the statements through line 20 will be executed.
- 09 - If there is room on the secondary form for another line, then
- 10 - all the statements through line 19 will be executed.
- 11 - The current line number on B is advanced to the next available line.
- 12 - A new line is inserted on B.
- 13-15 - Values for INV#, TDATE, and QTY on the secondary form are transferred from the primary form.
- 16 - The total of the column B.QTY is recomputed and placed in B.TOTALQTY. This is necessary since there will be no validation on the secondary form to compute totals.
- 17 - The secondary form is saved.
- 18 - If no I/O error has occurred, then we record that this inventory posting operation has indeed taken place. This will prevent posting the same amount twice.
- 19, 20, 21 - Match the BEGINS on lines 4, 8, and 10.
- 22 - Advance to the next line on the primary form.
- 23 - Matches the BEGIN on line 3, thus closing the WHILE statement in line 2.

Procedure Post

This procedure has a secondary file--"ORDERS"--but Key-from is left blank, which means no automatic look-up will take place. It isn't needed, because the procedure does a GETFORM. The primary form has a column item named ORDER# which has been filled in with several order numbers that are to be looked up and closed by posting a closing date to each order.

```

PROCEDURE INSTRUCTIONS

Procedure Name POST.....
Secondary File ORDERS.....
Key-from1 ..... Key-from2.....

L#.....Procedure.....
01 A.L# := 1 ;
02 WHILE A.L# <= LASTLINE (A) DO
03   BEGIN   { process all column lines }
04   CLEARFORM (B) ;
05   B.ORDERKEY := A.ORDER ;
06   GETFORM (B) ;   DISPLAY (B) ;
07   B.CLOSEDATE := VDATE ;
08   IF NOT IOERROR THEN SAVEFORM (B)
09   ELSE
10     BEGIN
11       PROMPT ('Form not found, quit processing? Y/N ');
12       IF YESNO THEN CANCEL ; {doing this will exit }
13       END ;
14   A.L# := A.L# + 1 ;           { go to next line }
15   END ;   {end of while loop }
16 DISPLAY (A) ;
17 PROMPT ( 'Done processing' ) ;

```

Figure 16-5

EXPLANATION:

- 01 - Begin at first line on primary form.
- 02 - Repeat lines 04 to 15 for each line.
- 04 - Prepare to get a secondary form by clearing anything not needed.
- 05 - Set the key on the secondary form so a GETFORM will work.
- 06 - Read and display the secondary form with the key just set up.
- 07 - Post today's date as the closing date.
- 08 - If no error in reading the form, then save it.
- 09 - But if there was one,
- 11 - Tell the operator and ask whether to cancel.
- 12 - If so, then cancel.
- 14 - Go to the next line.
- 16 - Re-display the primary form.
- 17 - And tell the operator we are done.

Global Changes to a File

This procedure will start at the beginning of a secondary file and make a change to the item PRICE on each form. The field "Secondary File" is filled in with the file to process (SOMEFILE) but Key-from1 is left blank, so no automatic lookup is done. IOERROR becomes TRUE after trying NEXTFORM on the last form in the file.

Note: This procedure will work properly only if the key item on the second file is not altered during the REPEAT loop. If it were, the form would be saved in a different place than it came from.

```
PROCEDURE INSTRUCTIONS

Procedure Name GLOBAL.....
Secondary File SOMEFILE.....
Key-from1 ..... Key-from2 .....

L# .....Procedure.....
01 FIRSTFORM (B) ;
02 IF NOT IOERROR THEN REPEAT
03   DISPLAY (B) ;
04   B.PRICE := B.PRICE * 1.1 ;
05   SAVEFORM (B) ;
06   IF NOT IOERROR THEN NEXTFORM (B) ;
07   UNTIL IOERROR ;
```

Figure 16-6

EXPLANATION:

- 01 - The procedure begins with the first form on the secondary file.
- 02 - If the first form has been read then repeat lines 3-7 for each form on the file.
- 03 - Display the form. Doing this slows things down. In a production version you would remove this statement, perhaps substituting a short prompt.
- 04 - Raise the price by 10%.
- 05 - Save the form.
- 06 - And read the next one.
- 07 - After the last form has been saved, the attempt to read the next one will cause an error, and this will terminate the repeat loop.

SAMPLE PROCEDURE FILES

One of the VersaForm XL files distributed with the system is called PROCFILE. It contains several sample procedures that demonstrate features of VersaForm-XL's language. You can browse through these procedures by selecting the "Enter or Change a Procedure" option from the Main Menu and then pick the one you want to see from the procedure index. You can then use the "Next" and "Back" commands to see other procedures.

Of particular interest is the procedure "MAIL MERGE". This procedure will print a letter using the name and address from the current invoice on the screen and merging it with a DOS text file, LETTER.TXT, (also distributed with the system).

SAMPLE APPLICATION FILES

Among the sample files included with the system are three that demonstrate a comprehensive example of procedures. These files show a skeleton example of an Invoicing and Accounts Receivable application:

- An invoice file (INVC.SPL)
- A customer ledger (CLEDDGER.SPL)
- An inventory file (INVENTORY.SPL)

The invoice file has four procedures:

*CHECKING - Chains to the USER procedure CUSTNAME if the customer ID is changed on the invoice, and then chains to the USER procedure GET INVENTORY if the column item ITEM# is added or changed.

CUSTNAME - Looks up a customer's shipping and billing address and transfers them to the invoice. If the customer is not found, a new customer ledger record can be created.

GET INVENTORY - Looks up an item number in the inventory file and gets the unit cost and description. If the item is not found, the procedure is CANCELED with an error message, "Item not found."

*SAVE - This procedure takes the invoice amount and posts it to the customer ledger by adding a line to the ledger.

The customer ledger file (CLEDDGER.SPL) has two procedures in it:

*CHECKING - This procedure takes a payment (credit) and applies it successively to the oldest balance starting with the item OVER-90.

AGING - This procedure will age the receivables for the entire file.

MONTHEND - This procedure will clear the column lines on all forms on the ledger file.

The inventory file has no procedures.

Chapter 17

CUSTOM MENUS AND CONTEXT SENSITIVE HELP

VersaForm XL allows you to replace its menus with your own custom menus. This gives you the ability to develop applications specific to the needs of your office, or to develop a product that you wish to sell. It even permits you to produce your own "runtime" system, without form design and procedure design features that your users do not need. (Contact VersaForm Systems regarding runtime licensing.)

OVERVIEW

Custom menus work like this: When VersaForm XL needs to display the Main Menu, it searches for a file called APPMENU.VFS on the default data directory. (Initially, the default data directory is the current directory.) APPMENU.VFS is the file that contains the custom menus for an application. If it doesn't find APPMENU.VFS, it looks for the file called VMENU.VFS, this time on the program directory. VMENU.VFS contains standard Main Menu and the other VersaForm XL menus.

Since APPMENU.VFS is standard VersaForm file, you can create your own , and have a custom Main Menu. You can also have custom menus for other functions, like Reports. Your Main Menu can invoke all the VersaForm XL functions, and it can also display your company and product name. AST's copyright will also appear at the top of the screen (we must insist on that.)

Custom menus may be created for the following:

The Main Menu. This appears instead of the standard VersaForm XL Main Menu. Users may select options corresponding to Filing, Reports, etc.

Sub-menus of the main menu. These may be called from the main menu, and have the same options.

Reports. Used when you select the Report function.

Print Formats. Used when you print a form, either from the Filing function or the Copy/Print function.

Copy Control Instructions. Used when you select the Copy/Print function and ask for automatic selection when copying forms.

Print Control Instructions. Used when you select the Copy/Print function and ask for automatic selection when printing forms.

Procedures. Used when you select the Filing function and issue the "Execute" command.

For example: when it is time for a user to choose a report, VersaForm XL will look in APPMENU.VFS for a report menu. If it does not find one, no harm - the system will behave normally. However, if it does find the menu, it will be displayed and the user may choose which report to run.

SAMPLE MENUS

A set of sample menus has been included. They are found in the file APPMENU.SPL. To see or modify these menus, just use VersaForm XL to access that file. To actually use these sample menus, rename the file APPMENU.SPL to APPMENU.VFS and start VersaForm XL. Rename the file back to APPMENU.SPL to return to normal operation. The sample menus are:

A sample Main Menu which appears when the program is started. Its key (a two-part key) is VF/MAIN. **The key VF/MAIN always identifies a main menu.**

A menu for reports in the sample invoice file, INVC.SPL. Its key is INVC/RPT.

A menu of print formats for INVC.SPL. Its key is INVC/FMT.

A menu of user procedures for INVC.SPL. Its key is INVC/PRO.

A menu of copy control instructions for the sample customer ledger file, CLEDGER.SPL. Its key is CLEDGER./CPC.

To try out the sample CUSTOM system do the following:

1. Copy the file APPMENU.SPL (on the program directory) to APPMENU.VFS
2. Start VersaForm from the DOS prompt by typing: VF <cr>. After you log in, the custom Main Menu will appear. You may select any of the options. Each option has a VersaForm file that will automatically be selected.

<p>Sample Custom Main Menu</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Enter Invoices2. Add payments to customer ledger3. Update inventory file4. Invoice Reports5. Batch print invoices6. Copy active accounts to new ledger7. VersaForm XL Main Menu8. Return to DOS

Figure 17-1

3. To restore the standard menus, delete APPMENU.VFS.

CREATING CUSTOM MENUS

To create custom menus:

Copy the file APPMENU (on the program directory) to the directory where you want to use it. Rename it to APPMENU.VFS.

Start VersaForm XL and enter Filing on APPMENU.VFS. You will see the menu form, as in figure 17-2. Figure 17-2 shows the menu form for the custom menu in Figure 17-1.

```

VersaForm Menu                                     Page 1
                                                More: CTRL=>
Menu_file vf                                     Menu_type main
Comments Sample custom main menu
Borders? Y      Use_Reverse                      Caption Sample Custom Main Menu
Background_file                                     Clear_screen? y
x_Origin 15  y_Origin 7  Width 50  Height 8      Numbers? y

L# .....Menu_text..... Function↓ ....Arg1.....
1  Enter Invoices          FILING  invc.spl
2  Add payments to customer ledger  FILING  c:clledger
3  Update inventory file    FILING  inventory.sp1
4  Invoice Reports          REPORT   invc.sp1
5  Batch print invoices     CPRINT  invc.sp1
6  Copy active accounts to new ledger  CPCOPY  clledger.sp1
7  VersaForm XL Main Menu    VF_MAIN
8  Return to DOS            EXIT
    
```

Figure 17-2

3. Fill in the menu form. The fields are defined as follows:

Menu_file For the main menu, enter VF. For submenus, use any name you like (except VF).

For report menus, procedure menus, etc., this must be the name (without extension) of the file to which the menu applies. If the file name has a suffix, remove it. For example, if your file is named INVC.VFX remove the “VFX” suffix. Just enter “INVC”.

Menu_type Use MAIN for the custom main menu. For submenus of custom main menus, create an appropriate name (don’t use MAIN). Use RPT, FMT, CPC, PRC, and PRO for report, print format, copy selection condition, print selection condition, and procedure menus respectively.

Comments For your use.

Borders Enter Y if you wish to place a border around your menu.

Use_Reverse Enter Y to display the menu in reverse video.

Caption This text will be centered in the top line of the border.

Background_file The name of a text file that supplies a background for the

	menu. You can use it to add text to the menu screen.
Clear_screen	Enter Y if you wish the screen to be cleared before the menu is displayed.
x_origin, y_origin	The location of the top left corner of the menu window.
width, height	The width and height of the menu window.
Numbers?	Enter Y to have VersaForm XL number the menu items, and accept numeric choices from the operator. The default is N.
Menu_text	The text of each menu item. If an ampersand (&) appears in the text, the character that follows it will be a hotkey for that menu item, and will be displayed in the "menu_bold" color. The ampersand itself will not be displayed.
Function	The function that is to be performed if the item is chosen. On a main menu or a submenu, the valid choices are given in Table 17-1. On report, print format, copy selection condition, print selection condition, and procedure menus, the menu is used only to choose a particular report, print format, etc. In these cases, use the appropriate designation RPT, FMT, CPC, PRC, and PRO, and use VF to call the standard VersaForm menu for that function. Check the picklist for acceptable values
Arg1	The first argument for the menu item. On main menus and submenus, this is the file name of the primary file for the function. On report, print format, copy selection condition, print selection condition, and procedure menus, this is the name of the report, etc.
Arg2	The second argument for the menu item. On main menus and submenus, this depends on the function. If the function is Filing, you may use Arg2 to name a procedure to be automatically executed. For other functions, it is the file name of the secondary file for the function, if any. On report, print format, copy selection condition, print selection condition, and procedure menus, Arg2 is not used.

FUNCT	Function to be performed	Arg1	Arg2
DESIGN	Form Design		
FILING	Filing	File name	Procedure name
REPORT	Reports	File name	Report name
PFMT	Print Format Design	File name	
CP	Copy or Print Forms	File name	
CPCOPY	Copy Forms	File name	
CPRINT	Print Forms	File name	
LABELS	Mailing Label Printer		
UTILS	VersaForm Utilities		
PROCS	Enter or Change Procedures	File name	
RELOGIN	Log in again		
SHELL	Shell to DOS	File to be executed	
USERFUN	Call a linked user function	First argument	Second argument
EXIT	Return to calling menu (or OS)		
SUBMENU	Call another menu	"Menu_file" (key part 1)	"Menu_type" (key part 2)
VF_MAIN	Standard VF Main Menu		


Table 17-1. Menu Functions

BACKGROUND FILES

Menu background files are simply ASCII files. These are text files that can be edited by any MS-DOS word processor. The only requirement is that each line in the menu be followed by a CR and LF (carriage return and linefeed) characters.

The file should be free of other control characters that some word processors use for document formatting. Your word processor probably has a "text" "non-document" mode. If not, you can still create the menus by using the utility editor VFEDIT, which comes with VersaForm XL.

CONTEXT SENSITIVE HELP

You may provide context-sensitive help for your application. The file VF.HLP is provided, and contains the help text, and additional text that is used in the auto-prompt mode. This file has a key composed of a file name and the name of a field. If the user requests context-sensitive help () when the cursor is in a field, the record for that file and field will be retrieved and the help text will be displayed in a window. If there is no help text and there is prompt text, the prompt text is displayed.

Place the help file (VF.HLP) in the subdirectory containing the data file that you need help on.

If the system is in the auto-prompt mode, the prompt text is automatically displayed whenever the cursor enters a field.

In both cases, if the cursor is not in a field, the system looks for a record indexed by the name of the file only.

Chapter 18

UTILITY FUNCTIONS

Several utility functions are accessed from the Utilities Menu, Figure 18-1.

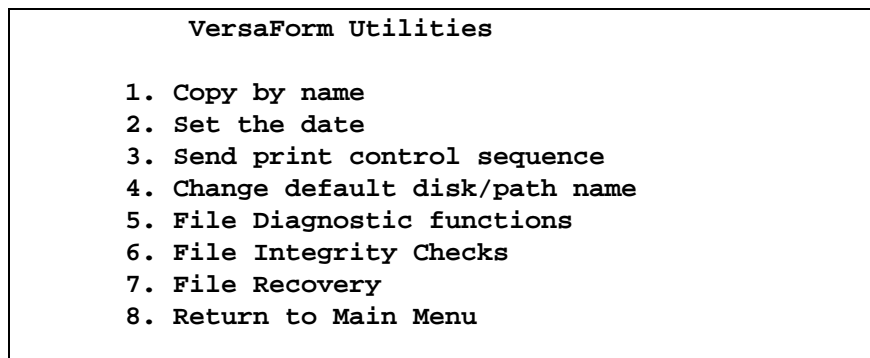


Figure 18-1. Utilities Menu

This chapter discusses each of these functions, with the exception of Copy by Name, which was discussed in Chapter 9.

SETTING THE DATE

You may set the date directly from the Utilities Menu. This action changes not only the date in VersaForm, but the DOS date as well. Network dates, if any, do not change. If you're not using the true date, remember to change it back when you return to DOS.

SEND A PRINT CONTROL SEQUENCE

If you need to temporarily change the setting of your printer, you may enter a print control sequence, and it will be immediately sent to the printer. The sequence does not change any sequence entered in the setup file. Refer to the section on print control sequences in the chapter on Reports for instructions.

CHANGING THE DEFAULT DISK/PATH NAME

When VersaForm asks for a user file name, it offers a default disk or path name. This is either last path name used, the default in `SYSETUP.VFS`, or the default in `SETUP.VFS`, or the current drive, in order of preference. This default can be temporarily overridden using this function. Just enter the path name desired.

FILE DIAGNOSTIC FUNCTIONS

The File Diagnostic function contains a number of tools useful to a programmer or a technician. It can print information about form designs, and list the contents of entire indexes. It can dump files in hexadecimal format to the printer or the screen.

FILE INTEGRITY TEST

In versions of VersaForm XL before 5.0, running a report automatically verified file integrity, because the report writer read through the file by following the index. In release 5 the report writer was changed to make it faster, and it no longer follows the index. Thus reports no longer provide the verification that the index is complete. It is useful to check file integrity periodically, as various DOS events can result in file damage, and you want to find out about it while you still have backup for the file.

The integrity test can test the form design, the free storage chain, the main index, and the linkage of the forms to the index. It can also test for and eliminate duplicate records. A batch version can be used to test file integrity separately (you could run it at night). The syntax is

```
C:> vf filetest [/fix] filename
```

The filename may contain a path and wild cards. If the fix parameter is used (do not include the brackets), the program will eliminate and unindexed forms, if it can. A log is produced which may be printed when the program terminates.

FILE RECOVERY

When a file is damaged but not irretrievably lost, the recovery facility can often recover the data. It does so by reading through the file and attempting to identify data records, then writing them to a new file.

The file being recovered does not need to have a readable form design present. But if it doesn't, you must provide an empty file with the correct form design, to receive the records found. Such a file can usually be built from an older backup of the lost file by use of the "Copy an existing form design" subfunction of Form Design.

Unless you are an experienced technician, use this program only as instructed by VersaForm XL Tech Support. If you are asked to run file recovery by VersaForm Tech Support, follow these steps:


Note: For this illustration, we will assume that the name of your damaged file is LEDGER.VFM.

1. If you are on a Multi User System, make sure no one is using or trying to access the damaged file LEDGER.VFM.
2. Back up LEDGER.VFM.


3. Rename LEDGER.VFM to LEDGER.BAD. If you already have a file named LEDGER.BAD, it must be deleted before you can successfully execute the RENAME command.

WARNING: If the file LEDGER.BAD contains information that should not be deleted, stop here and call AST for help! The commands are:

Delete: DELETE LEDGER.BAD
Rename: RENAME LEDGER.VFM LEDGER.BAD



4. Start up your VersaForm System.
5. Select the option for "VersaForm XL Main Menu" from the Main Menu. (This step applies to MD VersaForm users only. VersaForm XL users should proceed to step 6.)
6. Choose option #1, Form Design, from the Main Menu.
7. Choose option #3, Copy an Existing Form Design, from the Form Design Menu.
8. "Enter the drive letter or path of your file." The system is asking you for the path of the new file. If you would like to create this file in the default directory, press  to accept the default.
9. "Enter new file name:" The new file will be used to hold the recovered data. Enter LEDGER.VFM for new file name.


Note: If the system beeps and prompts "LEDGER.VFM already exists. Remove it?", it means your RENAME command did not work. Answer 'N', and go back and try renaming your file again. Or, call Tech Support.

10. "Enter the drive letter or path of your file." The system is now asking you for the path of the damaged file. Press  if LEDGER.BAD is in the same directory as LEDGER.VFM. Otherwise, enter the appropriate drive letter or path name.
11. Enter LEDGER.BAD in response to, "Enter file name: " This is the file you are copying the form design FROM.
12. Answer 'Y' to the question, "Do you want to copy reports, procedures etc? (Y/N)."
13. Answer 'Y' to the question, "Do you want to copy checking and filling information? (Y/N)."

14. The system will ask you two more questions after copying the form design. If you do not want to implement file security for this file, answer 'N' to both questions.

Note: At this point you have made a copy of the form design of the file LEDGER.BAD. It is called LEDGER.VFM. Now you will use the File Recovery Utility to recover the data from LEDGER.BAD, and copy it to LEDGER.VFM.

15. Choose option #6, Return to Main Menu.
16. Choose option #7, VersaForm Utilities, from the Main Menu.
17. Choose option #7, File Recovery, from the Utilities Menu.
18. Answer 'N' to the question, "Do you wish to create a new file?"
19. "Enter the drive letter or path name of your file." The system is asking for the path of your new file. Press  to accept the default or, enter the correct path of LEDGER.VFM.
20. "Enter file name:" Enter LEDGER.VFM for the file you are recovering TO.
21. "Enter the drive letter or path name of your file." Enter the appropriate path of your damaged file. You may press  to accept the default if LEDGER.BAD is in the same directory as LEDGER.VFM.
22. "Enter file name:" Enter LEDGER.BAD for the file you are recovering FROM.

Note: The File Recovery Utility is now rebuilding your file. Your computer may beep and ask you to press  several times through this process. This is normal.

23. When the recovery is finished, print the log. Since you copied reports, procedures, etc. in step 12, there will be a number of duplicates reported on the log. Don't worry about these.

Examine your rebuilt file (LEDGER.VFM) thoroughly. For example, if previously you could not retrieve certain records, verify that they can be retrieved now. If you saw duplicate items in reports, run the same report and confirm that this no longer occurs. This is the time to make the necessary checks to be satisfied with your rebuilt file. If you feel uncertain for any reason, call Tech Support.

24. Back up your rebuilt file.

TRANSFER UTILITY

The Transfer utility has the capability of transferring data from one file to another, and allowing the user to specify which fields to transfer to which. In other words, it's like "Copy By Name", but you aren't restricted to copying only fields that have the same name. This utility is implemented entirely as a VersaForm procedure.

Thus you can study it (it's an excellent example of the use of a third and fourth file in a procedure) or modify it. To use it:

Enter Filing on the file TRANSFER. There is one form already on the file, which contains an explanation of how it is filled. Get a clear form, and fill it out indicating the transfer you want to do -- which files and which fields. Then run the procedure "copy forms". There is also a procedure which will remove all the forms on the target file, in case you make a mistake and want to try again.

ACTIVITY TRACE

The activity trace produces a trace of file reads and writes of significant entities (e.g., forms, print formats, report instructions), locks, and index events. It is initiated by including the word "trace" in the command line, and is directed to the DOS standard output. It may be redirected to the printer or to a file in the usual way:

```
VF trace >filename
```

WARNING: Do not use the name of an existing file; you'll destroy it if you do!

DOS COMMAND LINE

When VersaForm XL is initiated, it inspects the DOS command line for several parameters. The complete command line description is:

```
VF [trace] [strace] [prtrace] [input=filename]  
[id=name/password] [filing] [filetest[/fix]] [filename]
```

The parameters may appear in any order, and they are not case-sensitive.



Parameter	Usage
<code>trace</code>	turns the activity trace on
<code>strace</code>	turns the programmer's trace on with output to stdout. It is thus redirectable.
<code>prtrace</code>	turns the programmer's trace on with output to the printer
<code>input=filename</code>	directs VersaForm to read input from the named file instead of the keyboard. When end of file is reached VersaForm accepts input from the keyboard. A colon can be used in place of the equal sign (this is useful to have the parameter passed through a DOS batch file).
<code>id</code>	the user's id and (if needed) password.
<code>filing</code>	the system will bypass the main menu and go directly into filing.
<code>filetest</code>	the system will bypass the main menu and execute the filetest function. If the <code>fix</code> argument is present, certain records will be fixed by filetest.
<code>filename</code>	If there is a parameter on the command line that isn't one of the above, VersaForm assumes it is a filename, and uses it as the default path and file name.

Example:

```
vf id=joe filing ledger.vfm
```

will automatically answer the signon prompt with "joe" and, make ledger.vfm the default file, and directly enter Filing.

UTILITY POPUP MENU

The utility popup menu allows access to printer and trace control, DOS date setting, procedure debugging, and shelling to DOS. The menu pops up when you press  .

```
UTILITY MENU
Turn procedure Debug on
Printer Functions...
Set the Date
Shell to DOS
Turn Autoprompt on
turn Memory Saver on
System Information
Trace Functions
```

turn procedure Debug on allows starting and ending the procedure trace. This displays each procedure statement as it is executed, and variables as they change.

Printer Functions allows switching between LPT1, LPT2, LPT3, and a file. Report printing, however, is not affected. You can send a printer control sequence, and test the printer.

Set the Date allows you to set the DOS date.

Shell to DOS allows you to suspend VersaForm XL and escape to a DOS command line. You can issue DOS commands or run other programs. Return to VersaForm by using the DOS command EXIT.

If **Autoprompt** is ON and you have provided context-sensitive help for your application, the help text will appear on the user's screen during filing.

System Information reports on your system configuration, including installed memory and display type.

Trace Functions allows starting and ending the programmer's trace.

Part IV

Appendices

Appendix A

FORMATTING AND BACKUP

Formatting Diskettes

Diskettes (floppy disks) must be formatted before they are used. Refer to your operating system manual for complete instructions. Whatever you do, though, do not inadvertently format your hard disk. This is an error with disastrous consequences, and DOS does not protect you against it.

Backup

Both diskettes and hard disks are backed up using DOS utilities or other backup products. The importance of **backing up your work cannot be overemphasized**. Sooner or later, your hard disk **will fail**. Keeping backup copies is the only way to ensure that you don't lose important information due to equipment troubles or accidents. Backing up on tape is preferable to backing up on diskette.

We recommend that you use the "structured backup" procedure and maintain two copies of all files. Under this procedure you keep three tapes or disks, which you label "A," "B," and "C." Back up to diskette set A on the first day. Use set B on the second day, set C on the third day, and then return to set A again.

Day	Back Up To
1,4,...	disk A
2,5,...	disk B
3,6,...	disk C

Every month, take one of the backups home and buy a new tape (or disks) to replace it. This will protect you in case of fire.

Every three months, hold a fire drill. Make sure that you can actually use your backups to restore from. **But be especially careful not to restore over your active data files**, which would destroy them.

There are two good reasons for using structured backup:

1. If something goes wrong with a diskette or a file, you may not know it until you try to do a backup. If you have only one backup diskette, the bad disk will be copied to the good one. Suddenly you would have no backup at all. With three copies of each diskette (or hard disk file), this is less likely to occur.
2. Rotating the backup diskettes gives you a chance to spread the wear and to make sure that the backup copies are readable.

Appendix B

SELF-CHECKING NUMBERS

Self-checking numbers is an option which may be chosen under VersaForm's Checking and Filling system to guard against data entry errors.

Items chosen for this option are usually numbers, such as account codes and part numbers, by which records will be repeatedly identified for updating or printing.

The procedure helps to prevent keying errors such as single-digit typos or the transposition of adjacent digits.

THE CHECK DIGIT

Self-checking numbers include a calculated check digit. The computer will repeat the calculation that produced the check digit, and then test whether the check digit in the self-checking number matches the one that it has calculated.

Check Digit Calculation

In the Modulus 10 system, used by VersaForm, the check digit is calculated from the basic number in the following way:

1. The units position and every alternate position (hundreds, ten thousands, etc.) in the basic number are multiplied by 2.
2. These products and the un-multiplied digits from the basic number are added together.
3. The resulting sum is subtracted from the next higher multiple of 10 (or from itself, if it is a multiple of 10). The result is the check digit.

The following examples illustrate correct and incorrect Modulus 10 self-checking numbers:

Numbers to be checked:	456261	730743
Basic number:	45626	73074
Check digit:	1	3

Computing The Check Digit

1. number is 45626	number is 73074
2. take 4,6,6 (leaving 5,2)	take out 7,0,4(leaving 3,7)
3. $4,6,6 \times 2 = 8,12,12$	$7,0,4 \times 2 = 14,0,8$
4. $8+12+12 + 5+2 = 39$	$14+0+8 + 3+7 = 32$
5. $40 - 39 = 1$	$40 - 32 = 8$
6. Result: 456261	Result: 730748
Number is: Correct	Incorrect

To assign a self-checking number, compute the proper check digit and add it to the end of the original number. You may use the VersaForm Calculator feature to calculate the check digit.

Appendix C

COMPARISON AND ORDERING

VersaForm's rules for comparison and ordering, applied in sorting, selecting, and indexing, are:

Items recognized as numbers are compared algebraically:

$-9 < 7.2 = 007.200 < 7.2001$

Dates are compared chronologically, as month/day/year:

$7/2/38 < 7/2/39 = 07/02/1939 = 7-2-39$

Anything not recognized as a number or date is considered a "string".

Comparisons are made in upper case, with multiple blanks compressed to one, and according to the ASCII collating sequence:

$"John\ Smith" = "John\ Smith" = "JOHN\ SMITH"$

The ASCII (American Standard Code for Information Interchange) collating sequence as used by VersaForm is shown below.

NOTE:VersaForm uses codes 32-127 inclusive.

32	SPACE	56	8	80	P	104	h
33	!	57	9	81	Q	105	i
34	"	58	:	82	R	106	j
35	#	59	;	83	S	107	k
36	\$	60	<	84	T	108	l
37	%	61	=	85	U	109	m
38	&	62	>	86	V	110	n
39	'	63	?	87	W	111	o
40	(	64	@	88	X	112	p
41	)	65	A	89	Y	113	q
42	*	66	B	90	Z	114	r
43	+	67	C	91	[	115	s
44	,	68	D	92	\	116	t
45	-	69	E	93		117	u
46	.	70	F	94	^	118	v
47	/	71	G	95	_	119	w
48	0	72	H	96	`	120	x
49	1	73	I	97	a	121	y
50	2	74	J	98	b	122	z
51	3	75	K	99	c	123	{
52	4	76	L	100	d	124	|
53	5	77	M	101	e	125	}
54	6	78	N	102	f	126	~
55	7	79	O	103	g	127	DEL

C-1 ASCII table

Appendix D

FILE FORMATS IN EARLIER VERSIONS

The original VersaForm program (before November, 1983) created UCSD Pascal (not DOS) files. (The Apple versions created Apple Pascal files.) However, beginning with version 2.7, VersaForm created DOS files.

Files created with VersaForm and VersaForm XL through Version 4 all have the same structure. These releases were all compatible in the sense that each release could use files from earlier releases. This is true even for the Apple versions; Apple II files transferred by modem or network to a PC using DOS were immediately usable.

Version 5 of VersaForm XL is not compatible with files created using earlier versions. You must upgrade these files before using them with Version 5.

Version 6 of VersaForm XL is file-compatible with Version 5. However, at release 6.12 the file format was changed to speed allocation and free-space management. Files from version 5 and earlier releases of version 6 are automatically upgraded to the new format. To return to the old format one must re-create the file with VersaForm File Recovery under the earlier version.

Version 7 is file-compatible with the later Version 6 file format. Custom menus from earlier versions are honored, but use of the mouse requires new custom menus to be made in the new format.

If you write procedures to access files that were created on VersaForm release 2.7 or earlier, you should re-install any "Justify" instructions using the Automatic Checking and Filling option in the VersaForm XL Form Design function.

If you are upgrading from Release 3.xx to a later release, all your old procedures must be re-saved. You must save the *START procedure first.

If you have files from before release 3.23, we recommend that you re-create all your old files by copying the form design, then copying all the data to the new file thus created. This will enable the system to automatically extend your files.

If you have release 2.1 or earlier, you will need to convert your data disks from the Pascal format to the DOS 2.0 format. Contact AST regarding file conversion.

WARNING: If you have a release of the Medical Billing or Legal Billing Applications earlier than release 5, do not use them with the current VersaForm XL release, as file damage may result. Call AST regarding the program upgrade.

INDEX

- *
 - *Checking
 - Sample Procedure, 280
 - *Checking Procedure, 186
 - *Command Procedures.
 - *Edit Procedures, 187
 - *Filling Procedures, 187
 - Pick Lists, 188
 - *Pick Procedures, 188
 - *Save
 - Sample Procedure, 280
 - *Save Procedures, 189
 - *Start Procedures, 188
 - *Stop Procedures, 189
- A**
- Activity Trace, 291
 - Add, 197
 - Adding Users, 160
 - Additional Files Form, 95
 - Aging, 280
 - Alt-F4, 9
 - And, 200
 - Answermsg, 224
 - Aorb, 191, 217
 - Appendlist, 224
 - Arithmetic Operations, 76
 - Arrow Keys, 9
 - Ascii, 12
 - Ascii Files, 208
 - Ascii Files
 - Exporting, 114
 - Importing, 208
 - Ascii Files., 184
 - Ask_Filename, 224
 - Assign, 224
 - Assignment
 - Operator, 199
 - Statement, 182
 - Assignment
 - Statements, 199
 - Assignment (=), 78
 - Attributes, 254
 - Auto_Last_Line, 159
 - Auto_Lock, 253
 - Auto_Prompt, 159
 - Automatic Checking And Automatic Filling, 81
 - Automatic Filling, 88
 - Automatic Lookup, 179
 - Autoprompt, 253
 - Autoprompt, 225
 - Averages, 101
- B**
- Back (B), 73
 - Backform, 234
 - Backup, 297
 - Begin
 - Statement, 194
 - Begin, 201
 - Bell, 225
 - Bellmsg (Msg), 225
 - Built In
 - Functions, 217
 - Functions, 196
 - Built-In
 - Routines, 196
 - Built-In
 - Procedures, 196, 217
- C**
- Calculate (Ca), 75
 - Calculation
 - Order, 198
 - Calculation, 90
 - Calculator, 75
 - Calculator Commands, 77
 - Call, 225
 - Call_External, 225
 - Cancel, 225
 - Cancel Form Design, 59
 - Cancelling Procedures, 205
 - Chain, 226
 - Chain Calculations, 78
 - Chaining, 204
 - Change A Procedure, 185, 195
 - Change A Column Line, 34
 - Change The Date, 287
 - Change The Design Of A Form, 60
 - Changed, 226
 - Changing The Key Item, 147
 - Character Strings
 - In Procedures, 193
 - Check Digit, 299
 - Checking
 - See Automatic Checking And Filling, 81
 - Checking

- Procedures, 186
 - Sample Procedure, 280
 - Checking Procedure
 - Chaining From, 204
 - Chkdsk, 13
 - Choosing The Key, 57
 - Chr, 226
 - Clear, 67, 77, 206, 227
 - In Procedures, 182
 - Clear (Padding), 207
 - Clearcol, 227
 - Clearform, 234
 - Clearscreen, 227
 - Cledger.Spl Sample File, 280
 - Close_Copyform, 227
 - Color, 254
 - Color
 - System, 256
 - Color Display, 15
 - Colsort, 227
 - Coltotal, 196, 228
 - Column Items
 - In Procedures, 191
 - Column Lines, 22, 59
 - Column Total, 94
 - Combine Character Strings, 197
 - Combining Files In A Report, 121
 - Command
 - Procedures, 189
 - Command Line
 - Dos, 291
 - Command Line, 63
 - Commands
 - Print, 69
 - Commands
 - Back, 73, 171
 - Back_Continue, 171
 - Calculate, 75
 - Clear, 67
 - Delete, 67
 - Display, 75
 - Execute, 74
 - First, 73
 - Get, 70
 - Index, 70
 - Insert, 68
 - Last, 73
 - Multi-User, 171
 - Next, 70, 171
 - Next_Continue, 171
 - Page Backward, 68
 - Page Forward, 68
 - Quit, 74
 - Remove, 73
 - Save, 66, 171
 - Save_Continue, 171
 - Search, 71
 - Space Report, 74
 - Undo, 67
 - Comments
 - In Procedures, 192
 - Commit, 166
 - Commit, 228
 - Comparison, 301
 - Comparisons, 200
 - Compound Comparisons, 200
 - Compound Statements, 200
 - Computation Exceptions, 198
 - Concatenate Strings, 197
 - Config.Sys, 13
 - Confirm Form Design, 59
 - Constants
 - In Procedures, 193
 - Constants
 - In Procedures, 194
 - Contains (Co), 121
 - Context Sensitive Help, 286
 - Continue Message, 215
 - Control --> And <--, 9
 - Control-Home And -End, 9
 - Control-Pgup And Pgdgn, 9
 - Convert
 - Print Format, 134
 - Copy
 - Form Design, 61
 - Copy
 - By Name, 144
 - Forms
 - Manual Selection, 142
 - Forms
 - Duplicates, 142
 - Print Format, 134
 - Print Formats, 143
 - Printing Control Instructions, 143
 - Report Control Instructions, 143
 - Copy Forms And Data, 141
 - Copycols, 228
 - Copyform, 228
 - Counts, 106
 - Cr, 229
 - Create A Print Format, 125
 - Cursor, 9
 - Cursor, 9
 - Cursoritem, 229
 - Custname Sample Procedure, 280
 - Custom Menu And Context Sensitive Help, 281
- ## D
- Damaged Files, 288
 - Data Items To Print
 - In Reports, 110
 - Database Format, Export, 114
 - Datapath, 114, 229
 - Date, 159

- Arithmetic, 199
 - In Procedures, 193
- Date, Setting In Utilities, 287
- Date_Character, 159
- Dates
 - Non-U.S. Convention, 10
- Dates, 10
- Deadlock, 167
- Decimal, 159
- Declaration Of Identifiers In Procedures, 193
- Default Disk/Path Name, 287
- Default Values, 94
- Default_Length, 157
- Default_Width, 157
- Delete (D), 67
- Delete Form Design, 61
- Delete Line
 - In Procedures, 182
- Deleteline, 229
 - Example, 196
- Depth, 230
- Design A Print Format, 125
- Designing A Form, 51
- Detail Lines In Reports, 122
- Diagnostic File Recovery Function, 288
- Disk Drives, 10
- Disk/Path Names, 158
- Diskettes, 10
- Display, 230
 - In Procedures, 181
- Display (Di), 75
- Display_Help, 230
- Displayfile, 230
- Div, 197
- Divide, 197
- Divide
 - By Zero, 199
- Do Statement, 203
- Documentation Files, 280
- Dos Command Line, 291
- Dos Configuration, 13
- Dos_Exec, 231
- Dots
 - In Form Design, 53
- Dummy Characters, 157
- Dup, 231
- Duplicate Forms, 288
- Duplicate Forms, 147

E

- Edit, 231
- Edit A Procedure, 195
- Edit Procedures, 187
- Else, 201
- End, 201
- End Key, 9

- End-End Key, 9
- Enter A Print Format, 127
- Enter Data On A Form, 65
- Enter Key, 12
- Enter Single Items, 55
- Enter Text, 55
- Entering Column Headings, 58
- Entering Procedures, 178
- Enteritem, 232
- Equal (Eq), 121
- Equal To
 - In Procedure Statements, 200
- Equipment
 - Optional, 13
 - Required, 12
- Erase Command, 24
- Eraseform, 232, 234
- Errormsg, 232
- Errors In Designing A Form, 55
- Esc, 25
- Evaluating An Expression, 198
- Ex (Notation), 217
- Exclamation Marks, 195
- Excludes (Ex), 121
- Execute (Ex), 74
- Expressions, 197
- Ext_Printfile, 233
- Extended Checks, 84

F

- False, 200, 233
- Fget, 233
- Field Names, 53
- Fieldtype, 235
- File
 - Size, 11
- File, 217
- File Functions, 288
- File Capacity, 11
- File Formats, 303
- File Handling, 213
- File Integrity, 288
- File Names, 52
- Files
 - Protected, 161
- Files, 12
- Files, 10, 158, 211
- Filetest, Can Be Used To Test File Integrity Separately (You Could Run It At Night). The Syntax Is:, 288
- Filing, 17
- Filing Command Procedures, 234
- Filing Commands, 28
- Fill Character, 157
- Filling, 88
- Filling

See Automatic Checking And Filling, 81
 Filling Procedures, 187
 Findline, 235
 First
 In Procedures, 181
 First (F), 73
 Firstform, 234
 Form Design
 Maximum Size, 9
 Form Design
 Columns, 57
 Form Design
 Menu, 51
 Form Feed, 157
 Form Id, 191
 Form Items, 191
 Form Names In Procedures, 183
 Form Size, 53
 Form Type, 217
 Format, 235
 Format Check, 85
 Formatsequal, 236
 Formatting Diskettes, 297
 Formfeed, 236
 Formitem, 191, 217
 Formtype, 217
 Function Keys
 Filing Commands, 64
 Functions, 197

G

Get, 236
 Get (G), 70
 Get Command, 29
 Get Inventory Sample Procedure, 280
 Getch, 236
 Getform, 234
 Getparam, 237
 Getxy, 237
 Global Changes, 278
 Global Variables, 133
 Global Variables
 In Procedures, 194
 Gotoitem, 238
 Gotoxy, 238
 Greater Than
 In Procedure Statements, 200
 Greater Than (Gt), 121
 Greater Than Or Equal To
 In Procedure Statements, 200
 Greater Than Or Equal To (Ge), 121

H

Home Key, 9

I

I/O Error Handling, 210
 Identifiers, 197
 Identifiers, 191
 Identifiers Procedure, 191
 If Statement, 200
 Import Data, 208
 Import Long Lines, 208
 Include, 213
 Index
 In Procedures, 182
 Index (I), 70
 Infomsg, 238
 Insert (In), 68
 Insert Line
 In Procedures, 182
 Insertline, 238
 Installation
 Color Displays, 15
 Memory Required, 13
 Serial Printers, 15
 Installation, 12
 Integer, 197
 Invc.Spl Sample File, 280
 Invc.Spl Sample File, 280
 Invert (I), 77
 Invoicing - Sequential Numbering, Sample, 270
 Ioerror, 239
 Function, 210
 Item, In Procedure Statements, 217

J

Justify, 83, 239

K

Key Field, 56
 Key-From1, 181
 Key-From2, 181
 Keystruck, 240

L

L#, 192, 217
 Label Text File, 149
 Labels, 149
 Large Character Strings, 199
 Last (L), 73
 Last Column Line, 159
 Lastcommand, 240
 Lastform, 234
 Lastline, 240
 Lastposn, 241
 Leading And Trailing Blanks, 198
 Left_Margin, 157

Length, 241
 Less Than
 In Procedure Statements, 200
 Less Than (Lt), 121
 Less Than Or Equal To
 In Procedure Statements, 200
 Less Than Or Equal To (Le), 121
 Line Numbers In Procedures, 192
 List Check, 86
 Literals
 In Procedures, 193
 Literals In Procedures, 191
 Lockfile, 241
 Lockform, 241
 Locking, 253
 Errors, 170
 Technical Note, 171
 Locking, 167
 Locking In Procedures, 169
 Locking In Reports, 170
 Locking On Interactive Commands, 168
 Locks
 Test, 172
 Locks, 171
 Log
 Printing Forms, 138
 Log
 Copying Forms, 143
 Log On, 155, 161
 Bypass, 163
 Logical Operators, 200
 Lookup, 88
 Look-Up Procedure, 175
 Loops, 202
 Lowercase, 191
 Ltrim, 241

M

Mail Merge, 280
 Mailing Labels. *See* Labels
 Mailing Labels
 Label Text File, 149
 Manager, 155, 161
 Mandatory, 84
 Max, 242
 Maximum Form Size, 53
 Maximum-Length, 83
 Maxline, 242
 Memory, 13
 Menu, 243
 Menu, Sample Procedure, 268
 Min, 242
 Minimum-Length, 83
 Mod, 197
 Mode, 253
 Mode Command, 15

Modify A *Start Procedure, 195
 Monthend Sample Procedure, 280
 Mouse, 15
 Move Data, 144
 Moving Data
 With Procedures, 199
 Moving The Cursor, 9
 Multiple Selection Conditions, 118
 Multiply, 197
 Multi-User Features, 165

N

Negative (N), 77
 Nested Statements, 202
 Next (N), 70, 73
 Nextform, 234, 243
 Non-Numeric Values, 198
 Normal_Vid, 243
 Not, 200
 Not Equal (Ne), 121
 Not Equal To
 In Procedure Statements, 200
 Notation, 191
 Numbers, 11
 In Procedures, 193
 Numeric, 83
 Numeric Precision, 206

O

Operational Modes, 170
 Operator
 !, 195
 &, 197
 *, 197
 /, 197
 Div, 197
 Mod, 197
 Operators, 197
 In Procedures, 191
 Or, 200
 Ord, 243
 Order Of Evaluation, 198
 Ordering, 301

P

Pad, 243
 Padding, 207, 253
 Page
 Length, 157
 Width, 157
 Page, 244
 Page Backward (Pb), 68
 Page Forward (Pf), 68
 Parameters, 196, 217

- Parentheses, 197
 - Password, 161
 - V.Bat, 163
 - Path, 114
 - Path, 229
 - Percentages, 107
 - Pgdn, 68, 244
 - In Procedures, 182
 - Pgup, 68, 244
 - In Procedures, 182
 - Pick Procedures, 188
 - Pickfield, 244
 - Pickfile, 245
 - Pickindex, 245
 - Picklist, 246
 - Pickup (P), 77
 - Pif, 15
 - Pop, 246
 - Pos, 246
 - Posn, 246
 - Prevent_Delete, 247
 - Primary Files, 177
 - Primary Form (A), 191
 - Print, 247
 - In Procedures, 182
 - Print (Pr), 69
 - Print Control Sequence, 158
 - Print Control Sequence, 115, 287
 - Print Format, 125
 - Design, 126
 - Form, 129
 - Print Formats In Procedures, 248
 - Print Line And Column Numbers, 126
 - Print Mailing Labels, 149
 - Print The Form, 68
 - Print The Form Definition, 62
 - Print_Ctl_Str, 247
 - Print_Labels, 249
 - Printer
 - Configuration, 157
 - Print Control Setup, 158
 - Test Ready, 157
 - Printfile, 247
 - Printfile Procedure, 209
 - Printform, 247
 - Printform Procedure, 209
 - Printing Control Instructions, 143
 - Procedure Call, 196
 - Procedure Calling, 204
 - Procedure Chaining, 204
 - Procedure Handling, 214
 - Procedure Names, 180
 - Procedure Post, Sample Procedure, 276
 - Procedure Statements, 183, 191
 - Procedure Statements, 196
 - Procedure Statements, 182
 - Procedure Types, 186
 - Procedures
 - Look-Up, 175
 - Programpath, 249
 - Prompt, 249
 - Put, 249
- Q**
- Quit (Q), 74
- R**
- Range Check, 84
 - Read, 249
 - Read Procedure, 208
 - Recovery, 288
 - Redesign The Form, 59
 - Remove
 - Print Format, 133
 - Remove (R), 73
 - Remove A Form, 35
 - Remove A Report, 123
 - Remove Forms
 - With Copy/Print, 143
 - Removeform, 234, 250
 - Removing Selected Lines , Sample Procedure, 272
 - Rename
 - Print Format, 133
 - Repeat, 202
 - Repeat Loop, 202
 - Report
 - Definition Form, 98
 - Definition Form, 95
 - Definition Form, 109
 - Displayed On Screen, 123
 - Sent To A Disk File, 123
 - Variables, 108
 - Variables, 120
 - Report:, 112
 - Re-Save Procedures, 195
 - Reserved Words, 195
 - Reserved Words In Procedures, 191
 - Restattr, 250
 - Restrictions On Checking Procedures, 187
 - Retrieve, 250
 - Retrieve Forms, 69
 - Return
 - Procedure, 250
 - Reverse Video, 157
 - Reverse_Vid, 250
 - Roll Back, 166
 - Rollback, 250
 - Rollback_, 159
 - Rollback_On, 253
 - Round, 251
 - Rounding, 206, 253
 - Rounding (R), 77

Rpad, 251
 Rtrim, 251
 Run_Report, 251
 Running Totals, 92

S

Sample
 Menus, 282
 Procedure Files, 280
 Procedures, 267
 Sample Application Files, 280
 Save
 In Procedures, 181
 Save (Sa), 66
 Save Procedures, 189
 Saveform, 234
 Saveneeded, 252
 Scrolling, 9
 Search (Se), 71
 Search Command, 30
 Searchline, 252
 Secondary Files, 181
 Secondary Files, 177
 Secondary Form (B), 191
 Security, 164
 Protected Files, 161
 User Authorities, 162
 Security, 160
 Select, 253
 Select Data For Reports, 118
 Select The Forms To Be Copied, 141
 Selection Condition Form, 95
 Selection Conditions
 Multiple, 119
 Selection Conditions, 116
 Selfcheck Digit (S), 77
 Self-Checking, 84
 Self-Checking Numbers, 299
 Semicolon, 201
 Serial Printer, 15
 Set, 206
 Set (Padding), 207
 Set/Clear/Pop, 253
 Set_Attrib, 254
 Setattr, 254
 Setfldinfo, 254
 Setting The Date, 287
 Setup
 Adding Users, 160
 Display, 157
 Function Key Options, 160
 Other Options:, 159
 Printer, 157
 Read Only, 156
 Report Options, 160
 Users.Vfs, 161

Setup, 155
 Setup.Vfs, 155
 Setup_Copyform, 254
 Setup_Printform, 255
 Sharing Mode, 156
 Silent, 253
 Single Items, 18
 Single Items, 53
 Size, 255, 264
 Sorting In Reports, 102
 Space Report (Sp), 74
 Spaces
 In Form Design, 54
 Special Symbols In Procedures, 191
 Spreadsheet Format, Export, 114
 Start Procedures, 188
 Starting Up Versaform XL, 15
 Stop Procedures, 189
 Str, 256
 Structured Backup, 297
 Sub-Expression, 200
 Subtract, 197
 Summaries Reports, 122
 Syssetup.Vfs, 155
 System_Color, 256
 System-Generated Values
 In Print Formats, 133

T

Tab, 9
 Table Lookup, 88
 Test, 256
 Test The Print Format, 133
 Test_Printform, 257
 Text, 53
 Textinput, 257
 Textinput Procedure, 208
 Then Statement1, 201
 Time_Character, 159
 Todaysdate, 90
 Total (T), 77
 Totaling, 99
 Totaling In Reports, 112
 Trace
 Activity, 291
 Trailing Blanks, 198
Transactions, 165
 Transactions, 166
 Transfer Data With Copy By Name, 144
 Transfer Utility, 291
 Transferring A Value, 199
 True, 200, 257
 Truncated Character Strings, 199
 Truncation, 197
 Tutorial Files, 280
 Two Part Keys, 57

U

Undo (E), 67
Unindexed Forms, 288
Unlock Locks, 172
Unlockfile, 257
Unlockform, 257
Until, 202
Uppercase, 191
User
 Authorities, 162
User Commands
 Hot Keys, 190
User Id, 155
User Procedures, 190
User Procedures, Chaining, 204
User Registration Form, 162
User_Did_Escape, 257
User_May_Escape, 253
User_May_Escape, 257
Userid, 161
Users.Vfs, 161
Utilities Menu, 287
Utility Functions, 287
Utility Popup Menu, 292

V

V@Getarg, 133, 248
V@Line, 133
V@Lines, 133
V@Page, 133
V@Pages, 133
Validate, 20
 In Procedures, 181
Valneeded, 258
Variable In Reports, 44
Variables
 In Procedures, 194
Variables In A *Start Procedure, 188
Vclose, 211, 258
Vclose_List, 258
Vclose_Win, 258
Vcoltotal, 258
Vcompare, 258

Vcopy, 259
Vcount, 259
Vdate, 133, 214, 260
Vday, 260
Vdelete, 260
Vdisplay, 261
Vexit, 261
Vmonth, 261
Vnokey, 262
Vopen, 211, 262
Vopen_List, 262
Vopen_Win, 262
Voutput, 262
Vpfmtoobj, 262
Vpfmtrsrc, 263
Vpick, 263
Vput, 263
Vquit, 263
Vreadch, 263
Vrename, 263
Vtime, 264
Vuser, 264
Vyear, 264

W

Warning
 Totaling Single Items, In Reports, 100
While, 202
Whole Numbers, 197
Windowing Routines, 212
Windows, 14
With Reports, 114
Word Processor Format(E., Export, 114
Writing Ascii Files, 209

Y

Yes Or No, 83
Yesno, 265
Yesnomsg, 265

Z

Zoom, 64